Togg | T10F

Owner's Manual

Introduction

Dear User,

We congratulate and thank you for your decision.

T10F is not just an automobile, but also a smart device that connects to Togg ecosystem and provides solutions that make your life easier.

This Owner's Manual is intended to help you get familiar with all functions of your new smart device and get the most out of it.

With this Owner's Manual which includes useful tips and information on how to use your smart device, you can learn how to best use Togg technology.

The graphics given in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. Depending on the model and equipment specifications of your smart device, some illustrations may not exactly match the appearance of your smart device.

We hope you enjoy using your Togg smart device.

The information about all versions of Togg T10F are provided in this User Manual. Since the options, market-specific equipment or hardware are not directly specified in the Owner's Manual, you should pay attention only to the equipment level and version of device that you will purchase. The term "(if equipped)" is used to refer to some optional, non-basic features. Entire contents of this manual have been prepared to help you to get most out of your smart device. Togg adopts a continuous product improvement principle. Togg reserves right to make necessary changes deriving due to various technical and/or commercial reasons. For more information, please contact Togg Care (Customer Care Center).

ONLINE OWNER'S MANUAL

By scanning the QR code below, you can access the digital version of the Owner's Manual with the most up-to-date content.

General Information

Environmental Protection

Working conditions and individual driving habits may have negative impacts on environment.

To contribute to environmental protection, we care about use of using your smart device in an environment-friendly way. Below you can find our recommendations for driving behaviors and environmental factors.

Working conditions:

- Check tire pressure frequently to make sure that it is appropriate.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary extra loads (for example, roof racks that you no longer need).
- Pay attention to energy consumption.
- Follow service intervals. Regular maintenance of your smart device will contribute to the protection of the environment.
- It is recommended to always have maintenance and repair works done by Togg Authorized Services

Driving habits:

- Just focus on the road and your driving, and keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid rapid acceleration and braking.
- Drive in an energy-efficient way. Use ECO mode for an economical driving.

  The high-voltage battery contains compounds that are harmful to environment. Improper disposal of a high-voltage battery may result in environmental pollution.
- We recommended you first choose Togg Authorized Service for disposal of a defective/faulty high-voltage battery.
- Recycling materials are recommended to divert waste away from landfills and help your community and the environment when reducing or re-use is not available.

  The relevant local environmental guidelines and regulations must be followed to protect the environment.

Authorized representative

Togg Europe GmbH, Schelmenwasenstraße 34, D-70567 Stuttgart, Germany

Warning, Attention and Information

⚠ WARNING

Remind you to be especially careful in those areas where carelessness can cause personal injury.

⚠ ATTENTION

To prevent you from making errors that could damage the vehicle as well as personal injury.

INFORMATION

Gives you added information that will help you complete a particular procedure.

Table of Contents

1 Introduction

1.1 Introduction to Electric Vehicle (EV)

Electric vehicles are driven just like any other vehicle, but certain functions differ from vehicles with internal combustion engines. The electric vehicle is powered by an electric motor and uses energy stored in the high-voltage battery as a power source. The drive power is pure electric and it does not require any power from fossil fuel. As a result, electric vehicles are eco-friendly with zero emissions.

The electric vehicle is also capable of recovering energy when braking, which is termed as energy recuperation. The electric motor works as a generator and converts kinetic energy into electrical energy and is stored in the high-voltage battery.

Main Components of Electric Vehicle

High-voltage battery

A high-voltage battery in the vehicle works as a power storage device. It is recharged using the charging cable and during regenerative braking.

Power electronics unit (PEU)

The power electronics unit serves two main functions in the vehicle:

Charging the high-voltage battery: The power electronics unit converts AC power from an external source into DC power to charge the high-voltage battery. It monitors key battery characteristics such as voltage, current, temperature, and state of charge during the charging process.

Power conversion: The power electronics unit converts high-voltage DC power from the high-voltage battery pack into low-voltage DC power. This low-voltage power is used to operate vehicle accessories and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Electric motor

The electric motor converts electrical energy into mechanical energy. This mechanical energy transmits torque to the axle through the transmission, propelling the vehicle.

12-volt battery

In an electric drive vehicle, the 12-volt battery provides power to vehicle accessories and electronic components.

1.2 Trumore Login

1.2.1 General Information

Trumore login is a personal ID that gives you access to all Togg services using a single username and password.

The Trumore login can be created from the Trumore App.

INFORMATION

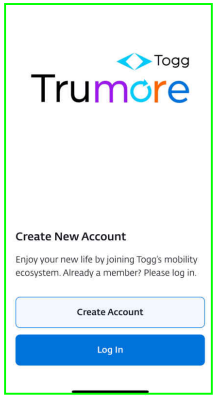
Internet access is required to create the Trumore login.

1.2.2 Creating Trumore Login

1. Scan the QR code to download the Trumore App.

TG02871

2. The user can create a Trumore login by following the on screen instructions in the app.



TG07174

INFORMATION

The entered email address must be used as a username to access your Trumore login.

1.3 Vehicle Overview

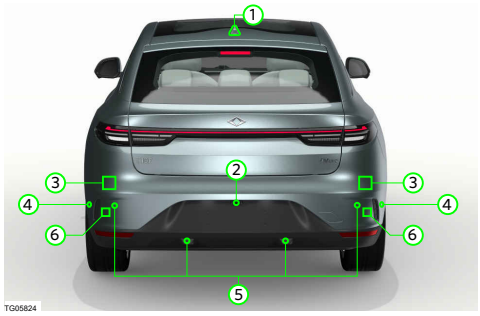
1.3.1 Cameras and Sensors at Front

1. Front smart camera (if equipped)
2. Surround view camera on mirror (if equipped)
3. Front RADAR, long- range (if equipped)
4. Front ultrasonic sensor, side (if equipped)
5. Ultrasonic sensor, front
6. Front surround view camera (if equipped)
7. Ultra wide band antenna, front (if equipped)

⚠ ATTENTION

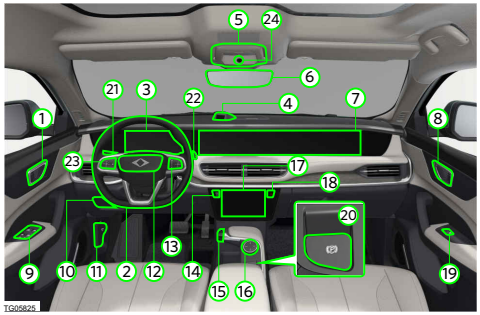
Do not install a license plate holder/frame which is bigger than the defined area for the license plate on the front bumper. There is a risk of sensor malfunction and detection problems of objects close to the frontal area of sensors.

1.3.2 Cameras and Sensors at Rear



1. Shark fin antenna
2. Rear surround view camera (if equipped)
3. Rear RADAR, short-range (if equipped)
4. Rear ultrasonic sensor, side (if equipped)
5. Ultrasonic sensor, rear
6. Ultra wide band antenna, rear (if equipped)

1.3.3 Interior Control Overview



1. Driver door inside handle
2. Steering wheel
3. Driver's screen
4. Driver infrared camera
5. Overhead console
6. Inside rear view mirror
7. Main screen
8. Passenger door inside handle
9. Window lifter switch main
10. Fuse box cover
11. Hood opener
12. Horn pad
13. Steering wheel switch right
14. Start/Stop switch
15. Gear selector
16. Rotary knob
17. Control display
18. Hazard switch
19. Window lifter switch
20. Electric parking brake switch
21. Left stalk
22. Right stalk
23. Steering wheel switch left
24. In cabin camera (if equipped)

1.4 General Warnings

⚠ WARNING

- ***Always be careful of both high-voltage and high temperature. The vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery and high-voltage components, which use high-voltage DC current to operate. The system can be hot during starting and when the vehicle is turned Off.***
- ***Never touch high-voltage components such as orange-colored high-voltage cable, high-voltage battery, power electronics unit, or A/C compressor, as there is a risk of serious injury. Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and all high-voltage components are energized when the ignition is switched Off.***
- ***There is a risk of serious injury or fire in the vehicle if the maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system are not carried out correctly. It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for your vehicle's maintenance and repair work.***
- ***Always pay attention to warning labels attached to the vehicle. There is a risk of burning from hot components.***
- ***For their own safety, all occupants of the vehicle must wear the seat belt on all trips.***
- ***The airbags in the vehicle are not a replacement for three-point seat belts. Airbags provide auxiliary protection when seat belts are worn correctly. For maximum protection, always wear seat belts at all times.***
- ***Never allow children or an infant to sit in the front passenger seat without a child restraint system. Always follow local laws and regulations.***
- ***Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if someone is inside. Prolonged exposure to high temperatures inside the vehicle can cause injury or pose a risk to life.***
- ***Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it. There is a risk of injury or risk to life if a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures as a result.***
- ***The vehicle is equipped with driving assist systems that help with driving, parking, and maneuvering. These systems do not replace your attention to the surroundings and do not remove your responsibility to follow traffic laws.***

2 Safety

2.1 High-voltage

2.1.1 Safety Instructions

The vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery and high-voltage electrical systems. It is extremely dangerous to touch the high-voltage components. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for any repair work related to the vehicle's high-voltage electrical system.

Touching damaged high-voltage components, such as cables, the power electronics unit, the high-voltage battery, and the A/C compressor, can result in a fatal electric shock.

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of serious injury or fire in the vehicle if the maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system are not carried out correctly. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for your vehicle's maintenance and repair work.***
- ***Always pay attention to warning labels attached to a vehicle.***

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of severe burns or electric shock that may result in serious injury or death.

- ***Never disassemble or replace the high-voltage parts.***
- ***Never try to disconnect the orange color high-voltage cables.***

It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for any necessary maintenance work.

2.1.2 High-voltage Battery Crash Deactivation

Your vehicle is equipped with the high-voltage battery crash deactivation feature. In the event of a crash, the high-voltage system is deactivated automatically to prevent vehicle occupants and other road users from an electric shock. Once this feature is activated, you will not be able to start the vehicle. It is recommended that you first choose a Togg authorized service for assistance as the feature is only service reversible.

Rules to follow in case of a crash to avoid injury:

- If your vehicle is drivable, pull your vehicle off the road, apply the electric parking brake and turn Off the vehicle.
- Check your vehicle to see if there are exposed high-voltage parts or cables. To avoid personal injury, never touch high-voltage wiring, connectors, and other high-voltage parts. An electric shock may occur if exposed electric wires are visible when viewed from inside or outside of your vehicle. Therefore, never touch exposed electric cables.
- If the vehicle receives a strong impact to the floor while driving, stop the vehicle in a safe location and check the floor. Leaks or damage to the high-voltage battery may result in a fire. If you discover them, contact emergency services immediately.
- If a fire occurs in the vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- If you are not able to safely assess the vehicle due to vehicle damage, do not touch the vehicle. Leave the vehicle and contact emergency services. Advise first responders that this is an electric vehicle.

2.2 Seat Belts

2.2.1 Overview

Using the seat belts is the most effective way to protect occupants if a collision occurs. Seat belts do not offer any protection in an accident if they are not worn. Incorrectly worn seat belts increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Make sure that the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts correctly when the vehicle is moving. Seat belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- ***The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the seat belt is not fastened or worn incorrectly.***
- ***All vehicle occupants must wear the seat belt on every trip for safety.***
- ***Never fasten one seat belt between two people.***
- ***Check the condition of your vehicle's seat belts regularly. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.***
- ***The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.***

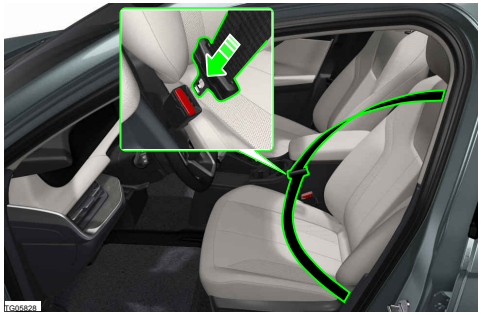
- ***Seat belts that are strained during an accident must be replaced.***
- ***Seat belt straps must not be twisted or loose.***
- ***Improper seat belt positioning can cause serious injury during an accident, sudden braking, or sudden maneuvers.***
- ***Remove loose or bulky clothing that prevents the seat belt from fitting properly and restricts your movement.***
- ***Do not position the seat belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses and pens).***
- ***Seat belt is intended for use by adult occupants only.***
- ***Make sure that seat belt is in the original position when not in use.***

2.2.2 Correct Seat Belt Positioning

Always fasten the seat belt and make sure it is positioned correctly. To ensure the seat belt is positioned correctly, following points must be taken care of:

- The lap portion of the seat belt must be tight across the lap.
- The shoulder portion of the seat belt must rest over the center of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always rest flat and securely on the body.
- Regularly tighten the seat belt by pulling it towards your upper body.

2.2.3 Fastening Seat Belt



INFORMATION

Make sure that the seat belt is not trapped or twisted and that it is not rubbing against sharp edges.

1. Hold the seat belt latch and pull the seat belt in a slow, continuous motion across your chest and lap.
2. Insert the belt latch in the belt buckle belonging to the seat until it locks with an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the buckle.
4. Make sure that lap section of the seat belt webbing is properly tightened.

2.2.4 Unfastening Seat Belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into its rollup mechanism.

2.2.5 Adjusting Seat Belts During Pregnancy

Pregnant women must always wear the seat belt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and wear as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt such that it crosses the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest. Remove all slack from the belt and ensure that it fits close to the body without any twists. Consult your doctor for specific guidance.

⚠ WARNING

Never keep anything between you and the seat belt to cushion the impact in the event of collision.

2.2.6 Seat Belt Reminder

Driver and front passenger seat

When the vehicle is in ready mode, the seat belt display icon illuminates on the driver's screen if the seat belt is not fastened. When the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h, a seat belt reminder flashes with a warning sound for 30 seconds. After 30 seconds of the initial reminder or if the vehicle speed reaches 35 km/h after the initial reminder, a second reminder with a flashing display icon and warning sound is provided for 120 seconds.

The indicator switches Off when you fasten your seat belt.

Rear seat

The seat belt reminder warning is automatically activated each time when passenger is detected on the rear seat. The seat belt reminder is also activated when passenger unbuckles the rear seat belt during the trip.

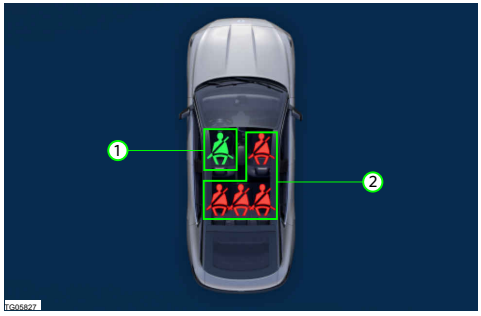
INFORMATION

The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the seat.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is steady or flashing)

Example of seat belt reminder pop-up on the driver's screen information tile:



1. Seatbelt fastened
2. Seat occupied but seatbelt not fastened

2.2.7 Seat Belt Functions

Seat belt pretensioner

The seat belt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seat belts in the event of a crash. The pretensioners may also activate when the airbag deploys. It may reduce the number of injuries and deaths from crashes. This is a critical mechanism in the event of an accident because it firmly positions the occupants in their seats and provides them the utmost protection from their airbags.

INFORMATION

Smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.

The rear center seat belt is not equipped with the seat belt pretensioner function.

⚠ WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during the first collision. If the pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioners deploy, the seat belt must be replaced.

Seat belt load limiter

INFORMATION

The rear center seat belt is not equipped with the seat belt load limiter function.

Seat belts with load limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the seat belts during a collision. Seat belt load limiters help protect occupants from seat belt-inflicted injury. In the event of a crash, the pretensioner restrains the occupant until certain amount of force is applied. At this point, the load limiter releases the webbing gradually to ensure less force on the chest of the occupant.

Seat belt slider

The front passenger seat belt is equipped with a slider that allows you to adjust the latch position. The slider can be repositioned upward before starting your drive to prevent latch to seat back noise issues once the seat belt is not in use.

2.3 Child Safety

2.3.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Children under the age of 12 years must be transported in a suitable child restraint system. Be aware of regulatory differences between countries.***
- ***Do not allow children to sit unprotected in the vehicle, stand on the seat, or kneel while driving. A child can be thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injury or death to children and passengers.***
- ***The child restraint system must be secured even if the child is not in it. Unsecured restraint system can be thrown into the vehicle during hard braking or accidents.***
- ***Never modify the child restraint system. Only install accessories specifically approved by the child restraint system manufacturer.***
- ***Do not secure more than one child in a child restraint system.***
- ***Never leave a child unsupervised in a child restraint system.***
- ***While installing child restraint system, always switch Off the seat heating feature of the corresponding seat.***
- ***Do not place children or infants on the driver's or other passengers' laps while driving.***

- ***Adjust the tilt and position of the seat in front of the child restraint system if necessary. Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child restraint system.***
- ***The rear of the forward-facing child restraint system should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat.***
- ***Adjust or remove the head restraint of the corresponding seat if the child restraint system is difficult to install on it.***
- ***Always ensure that the backrest of the seat to which the child restraint system is attached is securely latched and does not move forward. The backrest with the child restraint system attached may move forward in the event of an accident.***
- ***Only use the rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat after deactivating the front passenger airbag.***
- ***Always secure the child restraint system in the rear seat. Exceptionally, if a child restraint system must be placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.***
- ***Incorrectly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident. Always secure the child seat according to the manufacturer's instructions.***

2.3.2 Child Restraint System (CRS)

2.3.2.1 Overview

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child restraint system that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

To minimize the risk of injury during an accident or maneuvering, children under the age of 12 years should always ride in the rear seats with a proper restraint system.

If the child is too large for the child restraint system, use the seat belts to secure the child. Always follow the local regulations, and you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country.

Install the child restraint system properly in the vehicle. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Recommended child restraint systems (ECE R129):

Stature (R129)	CRS	Installation
40-83 cm	Maxi Cosi Pebble 360, FamilyFix 360 base	Isofix with support leg
76- 105 cm	Britax Römer Trifix2 i-Size	Isofix and Top Tether
100 - 150 cm	Britax Römer Kidfix i-Size[1)2)3)]	Isofix and Belt
135 - 150 cm	Graco Booster Basic R129	Belt

1. Use secure guard.
2. It is recommended to pass the seat belt through the secure guard and XP-PAD.
3. The side impact extension (SICT) should be used and extended to the outermost when in use.

Suitable locations for child restraint system:

Seating position	Driver	Front passenger[1)]		2nd row		
		PAB ON	PAB OFF	Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for Universal Belted (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/ R2/R3/No)	No	No	No	R3	No	R3

Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2X/ F2/F3/No)	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	(B2/ B3)[2)]	No	(B2/ B3)	(B2/ B3)[2)]	(B2/ B3)

Important terms:

PAB - front passenger airbag.

Adjust or remove head restraint of the corresponding seat if interferes with child restraint.

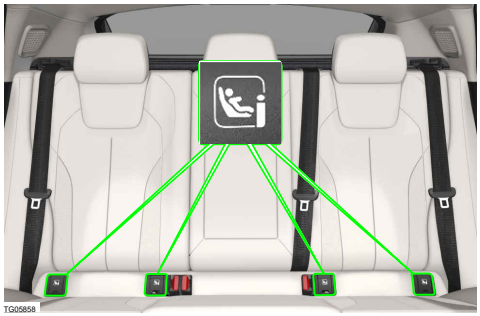
1. Adjust the passenger seat to the rearmost position and height to the upper most position.
2. Only applicable for installation with seat belt.

2.3.2.2 Attachment points for Child Restraint System

ISOFIX or i-Size mounts

ISOFIX mounts are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a child restraint system with lower attachments. To use the ISOFIX mounts in the vehicle, you must have a child restraint system with ISOFIX attachments. The child restraint system manufacturer will provide you with instructions to use the child restraint system with its attachments for the ISOFIX mounts. ISOFIX mounts are provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are behind the marked covers.

The ISOFIX mounts hold a child restraint system during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the child restraint system easier and reduce the possibility of incorrect installation. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint system. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the child restraint system to the rear seats.



Top Tether Anchorage

⚠ WARNING

The top tether anchorage is designed specifically for a child restraint system. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, never attach other objects to the anchor.

The vehicle is equipped with two top tether anchor points on the rear side of both rear outboard seat backrests. This must be used if the child restraint system manufacturer recommends attaching the top tether straps in combination with a lap belt or ISOFIX.

2.3.2.3 Installing Child Restraint System

INFORMATION

- ***To select, mount and use child restraint systems, observe the information provided by the child restraint system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be lost.***
- ***Before installing child restraint system on front passenger seat, always deactivate the passenger airbag. (2.4.6 Deactivating Passenger Airbag)***
- ***When installing universal child restraint system, always move the passenger seat to the rearmost position and height to the uppermost position.***

⚠ ATTENTION

It is mandatory to use SecureGuard when installing the KidFix XP child restraint system.

INFORMATION

Recommendations on installing Britax Römer KidFix i-Size:

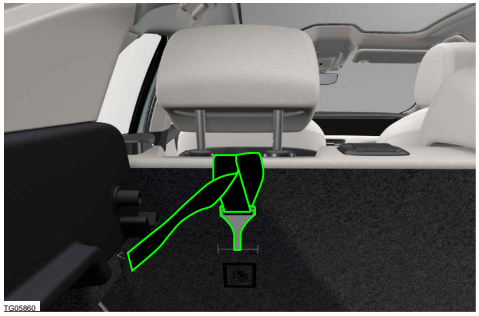
- ***Remove the head restraint of the corresponding seat on the vehicle. (7.3.4.4 Removing the headrest)***
- ***Route the lap belt through the SecureGuard of the child restraint system.***
- ***Adjust the child restraint system backrest to the fifth notch.***

⚠ ATTENTION

Child restraint system and its components can become very hot in intense sunlight. Touching hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury.

- ***Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight and cover it if necessary.***
- ***Allow the child restraint system to cool before securing a child into it, if necessary.***
- ***Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.***

1. Properly secure the child restraint system to the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or with the ISOFIX or top tether.



2. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured. After installing a child restraint system to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat.
3. A child restraint system secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected. When installing a child restraint system, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the child restraint system in a comfortable manner.
4. Secure the child in the child restraint system. Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

2.3.3 Child Presence Detection (CPD) (if equipped)

2.3.3.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

- ***Even if the vehicle is equipped with the child presence detection feature, it is the driver's responsibility to ensure no child is left unattended in the vehicle.***
- ***There is a risk of serious or fatal injury due to extreme heat or cold in the vehicle if a child is left unattended in the vehicle. Never leave a child or animal unattended in the vehicle.***

INFORMATION

- ***Child presence detection will not be operated while the vehicle is being charged or preconditioned manually.***
- ***Door unlocking does not cancel the child presence detection function warning; the door(s) must be opened.***
- ***The child presence detection system may not be able to activate climate control in the case of a low state of charge in a high-voltage battery.***
- ***Child presence detection may provide a false warning if any moving object is detected in the cabin area.***
- ***A warning may be triggered for adults, children, or pets.***

Leaving an unattended child in a parked vehicle, even for a few minutes, can cause heat stroke and death. A child's inability to exit the vehicle on their own combined with a low tolerance for high temperatures requires that children never be left unattended in the vehicle.

The child presence detection feature alerts the driver if the child is detected in the vehicle if the doors are locked. It helps to protect the child from hyperthermia if the child is unintentionally left behind.

According to vehicle configuration, one or two radar sensor(s) monitor the vehicle interior and detect the presence of children by means of movement and respiration in the front or rear seat area.

2.3.3.2 Child presence detection warnings

1. **Initial warning**

   An initial warning will be activated if a child is detected 14 seconds after locking the vehicle. The warning will be audible and visual for up to 5 seconds or until cancelled by flashing the hazard lights and activating dual horn.

   The warning can be cancelled by unlocking the vehicle and opening any door.

2. **Escalation warning**

   The system will initiate an escalation warning if a child is still detected in the vehicle after 90 seconds of the initial warning being ended or cancelled and doors are closed and unlocked. The warning will be visual by flashing the hazard lights to seek attention from other road users.

   The escalation warning(s) shall repeat at least every 1 minute for 20 minutes or until cancelled.

   Hazard lights will be visible in the first 15 seconds of a minute once the escalation warning is started.

   After the escalation warning is cancelled, the system will scan the interior again after all doors are closed and the vehicle is locked again. If a child is still detected in the vehicle, the system will initiate another escalation warning cycle until a door is opened.

3. **Intervention**

   Unless the escalation warning is cancelled by opening any door, the system will start intervention since the occupant is still detected in the vehicle.

   The intervention will occur in the following conditions:

   - 5 minutes after the first escalation was triggered

   The intervention will be in the form of:

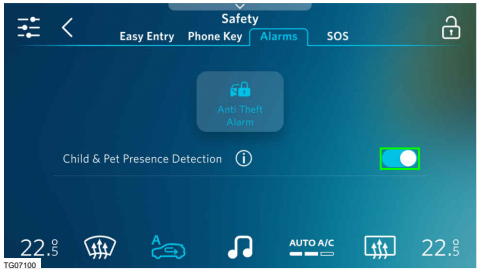
   - Reducing the vehicle interior temperature by activating the climate control.
   - Sending a mobile notification via Trumore App.

2.3.3.3 Deactivating child presence detection

The child presence detection feature can be temporarily deactivated through the control display. The deactivation will be valid for the single journey. The feature will be automatically activated when starting the new journey.

For deactivation, go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Safety → Alarms



- Tap on the child & pet presence detection button to activate or deactivate the function.

The inactive status of the child presence detection will be indicated on the driver's screen.

Display icon

Icon	Description
	Child presence detection deactivated (Icon is steady)

2.3.3.4 Child presence detection limitations

The system may not function in the following conditions:

- If the child is covered with thick clothing such as a blanket.
- If the child wears a thick cloth or jacket, that reduces the CPD's detection capability of body (chest or limb) movement.
- The radars are blocked by metal or similar objects.
- If there is electronic interference around the vehicle.

2.3.4 Child Proof Locks

2.3.4.1 Rear window child lock

The driver can lock the rear power windows using the window lifter switch on the driver's side door to prevent children from accidentally opening them.

- Press the button to lock or unlock the rear window control for passengers.

When the child lock is activated, the rear door window controls in the passenger compartment are disabled.

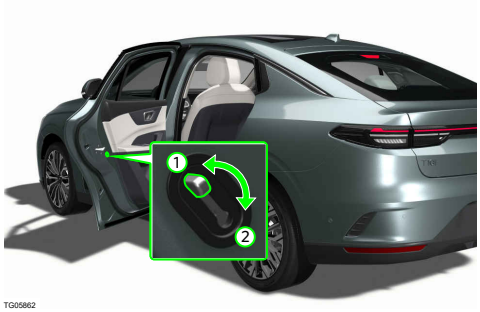
2.3.4.2 Rear door child proof lock

⚠ WARNING

If children accidentally open the rear door while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door child proof locks should always be used whenever children are present in the vehicle.

The child proof lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door child proof locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child proof lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child proof lock is in the lock position, the rear door cannot be opened from the inside handle. The rear door can be opened using the outside door handle. Deactivate the child proof lock to allow the rear door to open from the inside door handle.



Activating child proof lock

Push the lock lever downward (2) before closing the door.

Deactivating child proof lock

Push the lock lever upward (1).

2.4 Airbags

2.4.1 Overview

Together with the three-point seat belts, the airbags are part of a safety system designed to protect occupants in an accident. The airbags are not a substitute for seat belts. Always wear seat belts, even if the vehicle is equipped with airbags.

⚠ WARNING

The airbags in the vehicle are not a replacement for three-point seat belts. Airbags provide auxiliary protection when seat belts are worn correctly. For maximum protection, always wear seat belts at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Any object between the occupant and the airbag deployment area increases the risk of injury when the airbag is deployed.

- ***Never hold anything in your hands or on your lap while driving.***
- ***Never carry anything in the passenger seat. In the event of a hard braking or driving maneuver, objects can enter the airbag deployment area and can be thrown dangerously out of the vehicle if the airbag is deployed.***
- ***Never attach objects such as cup holders or phone holders anywhere in the airbag cover or airbag deployment area.***

- *Always make sure the airbag deployment area is not obstructed by passengers, children, or animals while driving.*

⚠ WARNING

Each vehicle occupant must be in the correct seating position with the seat belts belonging to their seat fastened correctly throughout the journey.

Whenever the vehicle is in motion remember:

- *Never stand in the vehicle or on the seats.*
- *Never kneel on the seats.*
- *Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.*
- *Never lie on the seats in the passenger compartment and the rear bench seat.*
- *Never sit sideways or on the front edge of a seat.*
- *Never lean out of a window or against the instrument panel.*
- *Never put your feet out of a window or on the instrument panel.*
- *Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.*
- *Never travel in a footwell especially children or animals.*
- *Never allow anyone to sit on the armrests.*
- *Never travel in the luggage compartment.*

⚠ WARNING

Never allow children or an infant to sit in the front passenger seat without a child restraint system. Always follow laws and regulations.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system can be deployed only once. The deployed airbag system has to be replaced.

- *Deployed airbags and affected system components must be replaced immediately with new parts approved for your vehicle.*
- *It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service for vehicle repairs and modifications.*
- *Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag system. Never use recycled airbag parts.*

⚠ WARNING

When the airbag deploys, fine dust particles and steam may be released. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

- *Fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes of the eyes and cause breathing difficulties, especially in people with asthma and other respiratory diseases. To reduce breathing difficulties, get out of your vehicle or open a window or door for fresh air.*
- *If exposed to dust, wash hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.*
- *Prevent your eyes or open wounds from dust entry. If dust enters your eyes, rinse with water and seek medical attention immediately.*
- *The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.*

⚠ WARNING

- *The airbag inflates in fractions of a second at a very high speed when triggered. Never obstruct the airbag deployment area with accessories.*
- *Do not install seat protective covers unless they are specifically approved for use in your vehicle. Otherwise, the side and center airbags may not inflate after deploying.*

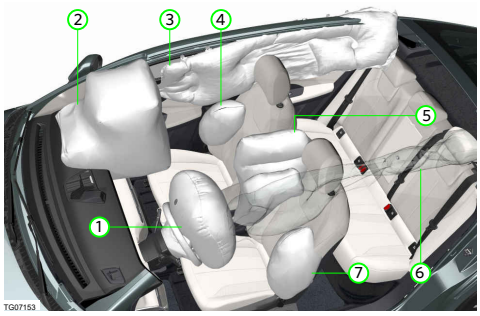
⚠ ATTENTION

Never clean instrument panel or airbag covers with cleaning agents containing solvents. It will make the surface of the airbag module porous.

INFORMATION

Provide your passengers with all the information regarding safety measures.

2.4.2 Airbag Locations



1. Driver airbag
2. Passenger airbag
3. Curtain airbag (Right)
4. Passenger side airbag
5. Center airbag (Far side airbag)
6. Curtain airbag (Left)(Shown transparent)

7. Driver side airbag

The installation location of an airbag is identified by the AIRBAG symbol.

1. **Driver Airbag**

   The driver airbag is located at the center of the steering wheel. In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face, and chest of the driver.

INFORMATION

When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 O'clock and 3 O'clock positions.

2. **Passenger Airbag**

   The passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel. In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the front passenger.

3. **Curtain Airbag**

   The curtain airbag are mounted along both sides of the side frame. This airbag protects vehicle occupants in front and rear seats against harmful crashes to the window on the side.

4. **Side Airbag (Driver and Passenger)**

   The side airbags are installed in the outer backrest frames of the front seats. This airbag protects the upper body of the driver and passenger in case of a side impact.

5. **Center Airbag (Far Side Airbag)**

   The far side airbag is integrated on the inside of the driver seat and helps to protect the head, shoulders and torso of the driver and passenger in the event of a side impact.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the far side airbag and cause serious injury.

- ***Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.***
- ***If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolsters, the center airbag may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger accidentally.***
- ***It is recommended for any damage to the original seat covers or around the seams of the center airbag unit must be repaired immediately by a Togg authorized service.***

INFORMATION

The side and/or far side air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision.

2.4.3 Airbag Description and Function

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing their movement in the direction of the collision.

When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag cover to break, and the airbag inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. Once a vehicle occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This can reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries from occurring, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing. The deployment of the airbag can also produce frictional heat. Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body.

Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can work effectively only when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position.

INFORMATION

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident do not necessarily give an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

2.4.4 Situations When Airbags Will Be Triggered

- Airbags are designed to trigger when the crash sensor on the front or side detects a sufficient impact.
- When a sufficient impact is detected by the front crash sensor in the event of a front collision, front airbags may get triggered. If an impact is detected by the front crash sensor, in the event of a side

collision, there are chances of front airbags getting triggered.

- Curtain, side and center airbags are designed to trigger when the side crash sensor detects an impact. They may also trigger in the event of a front collision if the side crash sensor detects the impact.

2.4.5 Situations When Airbags Will Not Be Triggered

- The ignition is switched Off in a collision.
- Minor front collision.
- Minor side collision.
- Rear collision.

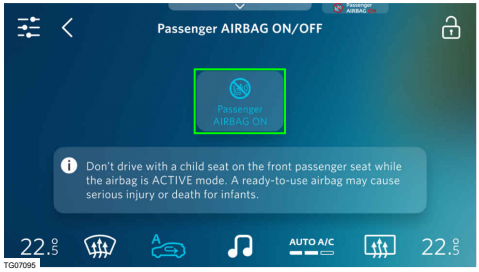
2.4.6 Deactivating Passenger Airbag

When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag can be deactivated by using a control display.

For the deactivation of front passenger airbag,

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Passenger AIRBAG ON/OFF



- Tap on the button to activate or deactivate the passenger airbag.

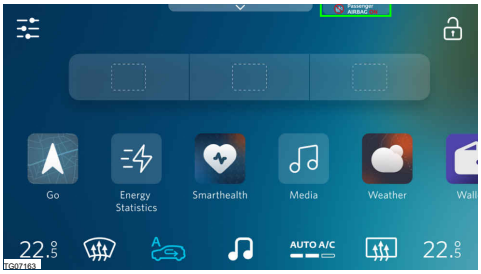
The passenger airbag deactivation is only possible when the vehicle is in the park mode.

The deactivation of the passenger airbag is permanent. When the vehicle is stopped and restarted, the passenger airbag status will not be changed.

Do not place a child restraint system in the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is not deactivated. Observe the instructions on the label outside of the sun visor.

TG01427

The status of the passenger airbag can be monitored in the top right corner of the control display.



ATTENTION

- ***Only deactivate the front passenger airbag if a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.***
- ***Activate the front passenger airbag as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.***

2.4.7 Airbag Malfunction

The airbag indication on the driver's screen remains lit if the airbag system is malfunctioning.

The indicator will light up for a few seconds when the vehicle is turned On. If it remains continuously lit, it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service immediately, and do not drive the vehicle.

Icon	Description
	Airbag system error (Icon is steady)

2.4.8 Disposing of Airbag

If you need to dispose of airbag, it is recommended that you visit a Togg authorized service.

Incorrect disposal procedures could cause personal injury.

3 Opening & Closing

3.1 Keys & Smart Access

3.1.1 Remote Key (if equipped)

One remote key is provided with the vehicle. Each remote key contains a replaceable cell. It is necessary to take remote key with you when the vehicle is parked.

The operating temperature for remote key is -20°C to 60°C.

⚠ WARNING

If a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures, there is a risk of injury or risk to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

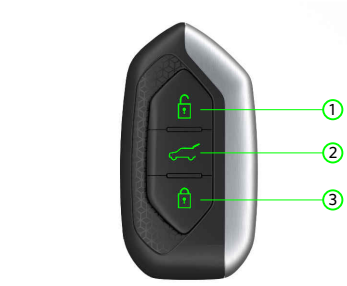
⚠ ATTENTION

Vehicle's remote key uses Bluetooth technology. However, due to technological limitations, the vehicle may not accurately detect whether the remote key is inside or outside the vehicle. Therefore, do not leave the remote key in areas covered by additional materials, such as deep inside bags or the trunk, as this may interfere with the key detection functionality and cause operational issues.

INFORMATION

Always make sure your vehicle is locked. The remote key function can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters (such as a mobile device or radio equipment) near the vehicle working in the same frequency range.

Functions of remote key



TG01434

- **Unlock:** Push unlock button 1 to unlock the driver's door.
- **Tailgate**: Push and hold trunk button 2 to unlock the tailgate only.
- **Lock:** Push lock button 3 to lock the doors/tailgate.

For more remote key functions, *3.3.3 Comfort Open/ Close* .

3.1.2 Mechanical Key

One mechanical key is provided with the vehicle. In case LV battery is dead, a mechanical key can be used to lock or unlock the vehicle. *3.2.5 Locking/Unlocking in the Emergency Situation*

To remove the mechanical key, follow the below procedure:

1. Press and push the side cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow.

TG02534

2. Slide the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow to remove it.

TG02533

3. After use, reverse the above steps to secure the mechanical key in the remote key.

3.1.3 Loss/Replacement of Remote Key or Card key

If a remote key or card key is lost, it is recommended to contact Togg authorized service. Have this remote key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If it is necessary, replace mechanical locks.

Replacement or new remote keys or card keys can only be ordered from a Togg authorized service.

Two remote keys and three card keys can be registered on a vehicle.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not leave any of the keys inside the vehicle. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that all keys are secure and the vehicle is properly locked and armed to prevent unauthorized use.

3.1.4 Key Learning Procedure

It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to pair remote key or card key as they have trained personnel and the necessary tools.

3.1.5 Replacing Remote Key Cell

It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to replace the remote key cell.

INFORMATION

The replacement battery for remote key must have the same specifications (CR2032) as the initial battery.

When the battery in the remote key needs to be replaced, a message "Remote key has low battery!!" is displayed on the driver's screen.

⚠ WARNING

This product contains a coin/button cell battery. If the coin/button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death.

- ***Keep new and used batteries away from children.***
- ***If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children.***
- ***If you think batteries might have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.***

⚠ WARNING

- ***Risk of fire or explosion if the battery is replaced by an incorrect type.***
- ***Disposal of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery may result in an explosion.***
- ***Leaving a battery in an extremely high temperature surrounding environment may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.***
- ***A battery subjected to extremely low air pressure that may result in an explosion of the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.***
- ***Ingesting a battery can cause severe chemical burns.***

3.1.6 Electronic Immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle. In some cases, it may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is a remote key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

3.1.7 Creating Primary Digital Key (if equipped)

The registered owner's smartphone is enabled as the primary digital key in the vehicle. To do so, the registered owner must provide proof of authentication for their vehicle. The proof of authentication can be started via the Trumore app. Vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during process.

Follow the instructions in the Trumore app.

Digital key registration process

1. Visit your device app store and download the Trumore app.
2. Create account (Trumore login) over the Trumore app during vehicle purchase.
3. Open the Trumore app and select "My Smart Device" option from the navigation bar.
4. Select "Add Smart Device" button and follow the instructions.
5. After successful registration, open the vehicle with remote key and keep the remote key inside vehicle.
6. From "Connections" section in the vehicle press the "Access Devices" menu, press "Access Devices" button and place the smartphone on wireless charging pad located in the center console and start the connection from mobile app. Refer to 9.3.2 Wireless Charging (if equipped)
7. After security check, smartphone and the vehicle will be connected and paired to each other over Bluetooth by entering the pairing code.

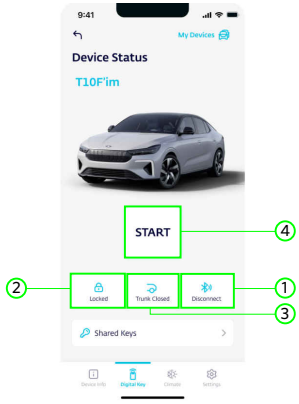
INFORMATION

- ***Your smartphone and vehicle must have internet access during registration of the digital key.***
- ***Since the option is linked to VIN and smartphone, if you apply to Trumore Smart Device App to identify the new vehicle in case of purchasing a second hand vehicle, old ownership will be cancelled.***

⚠ ATTENTION

Delete the smart device from the Trumore mobile application before selling it. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

3.1.8 Functions of Digital Key



TG07170

Unlock/Lock vehicle with digital key

1. Have the TruMore app connected to vehicle via connect button (1).
2. Press the lock/unlock button (2) on digital key to unlock the locked vehicle.

   or
3. Press the lock/unlock button (2) on digital key to lock the unlocked vehicle.

Trunk opening/closing vehicle with digital key

1. Have the TruMore app connected to vehicle via connect button (1).
2. Press the trunk button (3) on digital key to open the closed trunk.

   Or
3. Press the trunk button (3) on digital key to close the open trunk if vehicle is equipped with electric tailgate unit.

Starting vehicle with digital key

1. Place the smartphone with digital key in the middle of the wireless charging mat.
2. Make sure that the display is facing upwards.
3. Press the Start button (4) on the Trumore app for start demand.
4. After successful authentication, press "Start/ Stop Button" on the vehicle in 30s validity duration.

3.1.9 Limitations of Digital Key

Certain limitations can prevent the proper operation of a digital key. Some of them are listed below:

- If the smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- If there are objects between the smartphone and its cover, for example, a card with a chip.
- If the smartphone is shielded due to buildings or metal objects.
- If the smartphone is far away, depending on phone's ability.

3.1.10 Card Key

The Card key is used to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle. The system works using the short-range radio-frequency identification (RFID) signals.

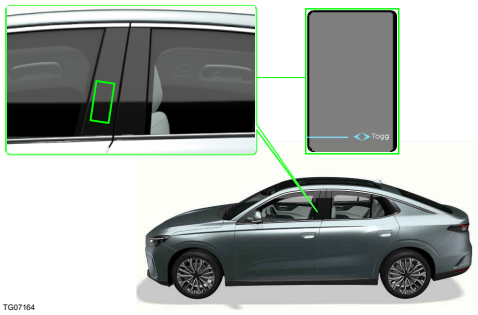
One card key will be provided with the vehicle.

INFORMATION

The registered card key cannot be used for another vehicle.

Limitation of Card key

- If card key is shielded from RFID reader antenna in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- If there are objects over Card key or have a cover of metal or tick plastic which would interfere with distance with RFID reader antenna.



Locking / unlocking vehicle with card key

Card key can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.

- Bring and hold the card key vertically near the RFID reader antenna (1-2 cm) mounted on the driver side B-pillar to lock or unlock the vehicle.

INFORMATION

Depending on how the Card Key is positioned near the RFID reader, it might need to make direct contact to RFID reader surface to have reading for locking and unlocking which would take at max two or three seconds.

Locking/unlocking confirmation will be provided by flashing turn signal.

Starting the vehicle with card key

When the vehicle is unlocked using the card key, the vehicle can be started without placing it on the wireless charging mat. Vehicle start authorization is limited to 3-minutes period.

1. Unlock the vehicle using the card key.
2. Press the start/stop button within 3-minutes of unlocking the vehicle.

If the vehicle is not started within 3-minutes, immobilizer re-verification is required. Immobilizer re-verification can be done by placing the card key on the wireless charging mat. It restarts the 3-minutes authentication period.

3.2 Doors

3.2.1 Locking/Unlocking from Outside of the Vehicle

The buttons on the remote key can be used to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate at the same time. This can also be done without pressing the remote key buttons on models equipped with the optional keyless entry feature.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of injury. Parts of the body can become trapped when the doors are operated. When you open or close the door, make sure that the area of movement of the doors is kept clear.

Remote key range

To unlock the vehicle with the remote key, it must be within the usage ranges below,

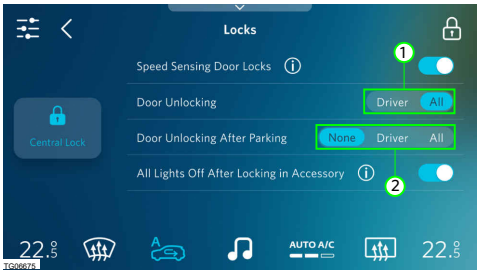
- 35 m for all sides of RWD vehicle.
- 20 m for the front side of AWD vehicle and 35 m for all other sides of AWD vehicle.

Locking and unlocking

Lock/Unlock settings can be changed using the control display.

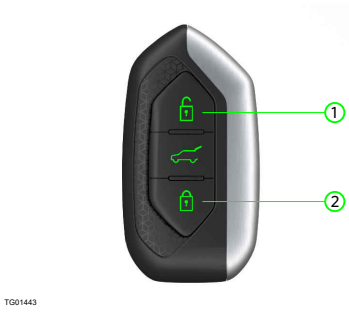
Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Locks



- Tap on the button (1) "Driver or All" to set the desired door unlocking.
- Tap on the button (2) "None or Driver or All" to set the desired door unlocking setting after engaging the electric parking brake.

To lock the vehicle, all the doors must be closed. If the tailgate is open, it will be locked and the alarm will be armed when it is closed.



TG01443

Locking

1. Close all the doors.
2. Press the lock button (2) on the remote key to lock.

Unlocking

1. Press the unlock button (1) on the remote key.
2. Open the door.

Unlocking with card key

1. Bring and hold the card key vertically near the RFID reader antenna (1-2 cm) mounted on the driver side B-pillar to lock or unlock the vehicle.
2. Open the door.

INFORMATION

If the card key is not detected, slightly change the position of the card key over the b pillar area as shown over back of the card key and repeat the procedure.

Locking/Unlocking confirmation

The turn signals show that the vehicle is locked/ unlocked with the remote key or keyless entry.

- **Locking**: The turn signals flash once and the outside rear view mirrors will fold in.
- **Unlocking**: The turn signals flash twice and the door mirrors will fold out.

INFORMATION

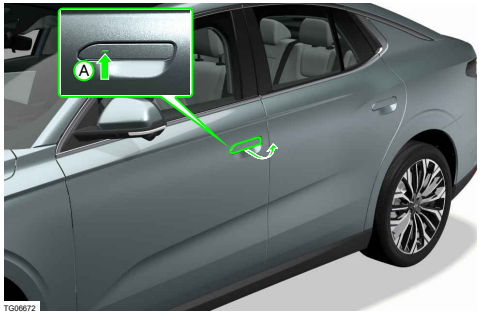
When the vehicle is locked, confirmation will only be given if all the doors, the tailgate and the hood are closed.

3.2.2 Remote Key Keyless Access

In this feature, it is only necessary to have a remote key in your possession to operate the central locking system. Models with keyless entry have a button on the outside of the front door handle for unlocking the vehicle. The tailgate has a touchpad used only for unlocking.

INFORMATION

Only one of the door handle's unlock button should be pressed at a time. If both areas are pressed simultaneously, the desired unlocking action may not occur or may be delayed.



TG06672

Locking (Remote key walk away exit)

All the doors have to be closed before locking the vehicle.

1. Close all doors.
2. Walk away from the vehicle, it will automatically lock when the remote key is about 15 meters away, subject to environmental conditions.

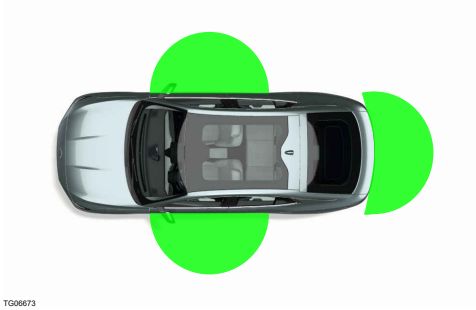
Unlocking (Remote key keyless entry)

1. Press the button (A) on the outside of the front door handle.
2. Pull a door handle to unlock.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not leave any of the keys inside the vehicle. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that all keys are secure and the vehicle is properly locked and armed to prevent unauthorized use.

Keyless entry limitations



TG06673

Make sure your remote control is within 2 m from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system cannot function if:

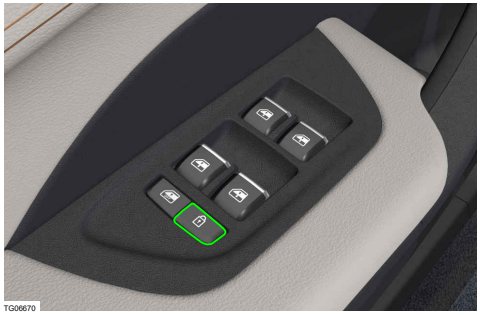
- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle low-voltage battery has no charge.
- The remote control cell has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to or blocked by metal objects or electronic devices, e.g. keys or a cell phone.

Keyless Go

For vehicles with keyless go feature, the remote key does not have to be physically handled in order to start the vehicle (The remote key only needs to be in the front part of the passenger compartment).

3.2.3 Locking/Unlocking from Inside of the Vehicle (Central Locking)

With buttons on driver's door:



TG06670

Use the lock button (1) on the driver's door to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate at the same time.

Driver and passenger doors can be locked and unlocked separately via inner handle lock mechanism. 3.2.5.2 Locking

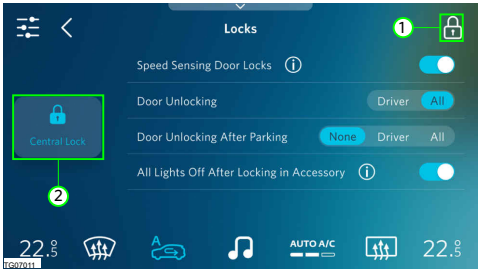
INFORMATION

If the childproof lock is On, then rear doors cannot be opened from inside.

With control display:

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Locks



TG07011

- Tap on the button (1) or (2) to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate at the same time.

INFORMATION

Central locking button (1) is always available on the control display.

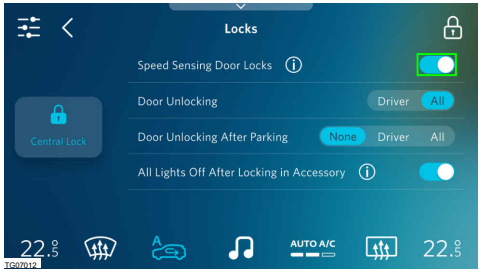
3.2.4 Speed Sensing Door Locks

All the doors and the tailgate will lock automatically when the vehicle starts to move at a speed of 10 km/h.

Speed sensing door locks can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Locks



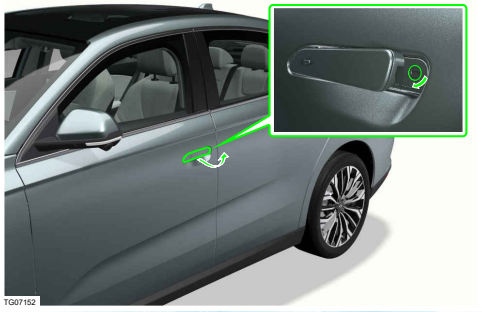
- Tap on the speed sensing door locks button to activate/deactivate the speed sensing door locks function.

3.2.5 Locking/Unlocking in the Emergency Situation

3.2.5.1 Unlocking

Unlocking the vehicle with the mechanical key

1. Pull the outer door handle of driver's door.
2. Insert the mechanical key to the driver's door handle lock.
3. Turn the mechanical key clockwise to unlock the door via tip of keyfob .



3.2.5.2 Locking

Locking the vehicle with the knob on the inner door handle

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Pull the outer door handle and hold it in the open position.
3. Turn the knob on the inner door handle to the lock position.
4. Close the door and release the outer door handle while supporting the door with your other hand.

⚠ ATTENTION

After locking the door, always check the door gap to make sure the vehicle is locked. Push the door toward the vehicle, and then pull the handle lever. If the door can be opened, try the locking procedure again.

3.3 Windows

3.3.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when operating the window.

When operating the window, parts of the body could be drawn in or become trapped between the window and window frame.

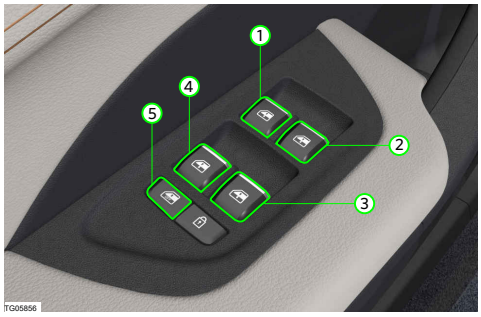
- ***Make sure that nobody is touching the window.***
- ***If someone is trapped, release the button immediately or pull it in order to close the window again.***

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of being trapped when children operate the window. Children could be trapped if they operate the windows, particularly when unattended.

- ***Activate the child lock for the rear passenger compartment windows.***
- ***When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote key with you and lock the vehicle.***
- ***Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.***

3.3.2 Opening and Closing Windows from Inside the Vehicle



1. Front left door window
2. Front right door window
3. Rear right door window
4. Rear left door window
5. Rear window child lock

The windows can be operated under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is in accessory or ready mode.
- For a short while after the vehicle is turned Off.

The driver can control all power windows using window lifter switch on driver door panel. The window lifter switch on each door controls only the window on that door.

All power window lifter switches are equipped with a two-stage operation.

One touch operation:

The one touch up/down function allows the windows to be completely opened or closed.

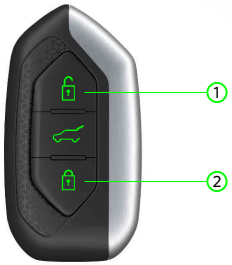
- Briefly press the window lifter switch to the second level to open the window.
- Briefly pull the window lifter switch to the second level to close the window.

Do not hold the window switch up or down when using the one touch function, as it will interrupt the operation.

Manual operation:

- Press the window lifter switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.
- Pull the window lifter switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

3.3.3 Comfort Open/Close



Opening:

- Press and hold the unlock button (1) on the remote key after unlocking the vehicle.

The windows open for as long as the button (1) on the remote key remains pressed.

Closing:

- Press and hold the lock button (2) on the remote key after locking the vehicle.

The windows close for as long as the button (2) on the vehicle key remains pressed.

⚠ WARNING

When using remote closing systems, ensure they are operated only when the operator has a clear view of the vehicle to prevent anyone from being trapped by power-operated windows, roof panels, or partition equipment.

INFORMATION

When all of the windows are closed, the turn signals will flash.

3.3.4 Anti Trap Function

The anti trap function for the windows can reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing. If the window is not able to close because of stiffness or an obstruction, the window will immediately open again.

The anti trap function is only an aid and is not a substitute for your attentiveness. During the closing process, make sure that no body parts are in the closing area.

3.3.5 Correcting Malfunction

After error detection, the following functions are disabled:

- Automatic movement (Up and Down)
- Soft stop function
- Anti trap function
- Comfort commands

To reset the function, proceed as below:

1. Close the windows and pull the window lifter switch up until the window stops after anti-pinch detection.
2. Pull the window lifter switch up again for a while.
3. Open the window completely and push the window lifter switch for a while.

If the one touch function continues to malfunction after resetting, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the system checked.

3.4 Hood & Tailgate

3.4.1 Hood

3.4.1.1 Safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

If you open the hood because of vehicle fire in the front compartment, the following situations can occur:

- ***You can come into contact with hot gases.***
- ***You can come into contact with other escaping hot operating fluids.***

If you notice a fire in the front compartment, keep the hood closed and call the fire service immediately.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of injury due to moving parts. Components in the front compartment may remain active or start unexpectedly, even when the vehicle's drive system is turned off.

Before opening the hood, observe the following precautions:

- ***Ensure the vehicle is turned off.***
- ***Avoid contact with any moving parts, such as the fan's rotating area, to prevent injury.***
- ***Remove any jewelry, watches, or loose items.***
- ***Keep clothing and hair away of moving components at all times.***

⚠ WARNING

Contact with high-voltage components may result in injury.

- ***It is recommended that orange cables should only be handled by trained and qualified Togg service personnel.***
- ***Do not touch any components that have not been clearly described/explained in this manual.***

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of damage to the hood or windscreen wipers.

- ***Make sure that the windscreen wipers are not folded away when opening the hood.***
- ***Always turn Off windscreen wipers before opening the hood.***

3.4.1.2 Opening and closing hood

Opening

1. Open the driver door.
2. Pull the hood release handle and allow it to return to its resting position. This will disengage the primary latch.
3. Pull the release handle again to fully release the hood.
4. Lift and open the hood.

Closing

1. Push down the hood until it starts to close because of its own weight.
2. Ensure the hood latch is engaged in the lock. Push down on the hood to close it fully.

Display icon

When the hood latch is fully released, a warning icon will appear on the driver's screen, and an audible alert will sound. If the vehicle starts to move, the audible signal will be repeated several times.

Icon	Description
	Hood not closed

⚠ WARNING

If the hood is not securely closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, obstructing your view of the road. This could result in accidents or serious injury.

- ***Always verify that the hood latch is properly engaged after closing the hood.***
- ***If you notice the hood is not properly closed while driving, stop the vehicle safely and close the hood.***
- ***Never open or close the hood when someone is within the range of its movement.***

INFORMATION

If the warning symbol remains On or if the audible signal is given even if the hood is completely closed and locked, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.

3.4.1.3 Active hood

⚠ WARNING

- ***The active hood system is designed to assist in protecting pedestrians, but it is not a substitute for the driver's attention. The system works within its limitations and may not activate in all situations or may react with a delay. Always remain attentive while driving. The driver is fully responsible for the control of the vehicle at all times.***
- ***The active hood cannot detect every potential driving scenario. It may not function correctly in certain conditions, and there is a possibility of delayed or incorrect reactions. If used carelessly, there is a risk of accidents, serious injuries, or death.***

The active hood is designed to enhance pedestrian safety by reducing the risk of injury in the event of a front-end collision. When a collision occurs at speeds between approximately 25 - 55 km/h, sensors located in the frontal area detect the impact and trigger the system. This action raises the rear portion of the hood by several centimeters, creating an additional crumple zone to help protect a pedestrian's head.

For the system to function properly, the hood must not have been previously deformed by external forces. If the hood is damaged, the system may not deploy as intended.

The active hood may activate even in situations where there is no pedestrian involved such as front impacts with objects or animals.

When the system is triggered, the hood is lifted, and the hinges lock it in the raised position. A warning message will also appear on the driver's screen, indicating that the system needs repair.

After the system is triggered:

- Do not attempt to close the hood yourself. If the active hood has been triggered, it is recommended that the system must be inspected and repaired by a Togg authorized service.
- If the system is activated, Togg does not recommend driving the vehicle. The vehicle must be towed. (*11.3 Towing*)

3.4.2 Tailgate

3.4.2.1 Safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***The tailgate opens outward, which could cause injury or damage. Always ensure that the area around the tailgate is clear before opening or closing it.***

- *Body parts can be trapped during tailgate operation. There is a risk of injury. Always keep the area around the tailgate clear when opening or closing it.*

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of damage because of uncontrolled opening or closing of the tailgate.

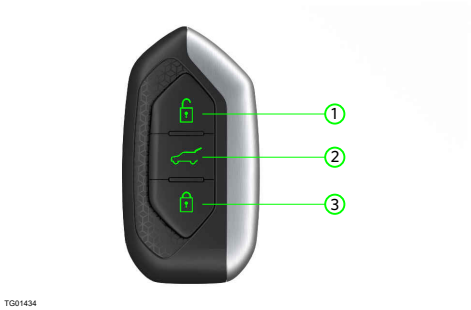
- *Ensure there is adequate clearance behind and above the vehicle (e.g., roof racks, garage ceiling).*
- *Do not allow any load to extend beyond the edge of the luggage compartment.*

INFORMATION

The tailgate is locked and unlocked with the doors.
(3.2 Doors)

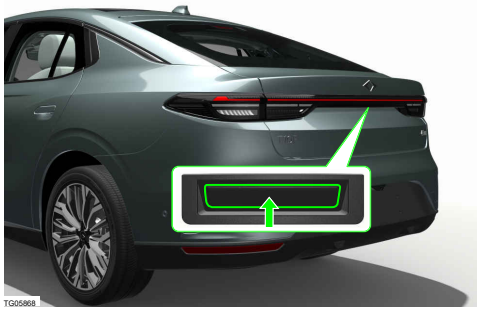
3.4.2.2 Manual tailgate (if equipped)

Unlocking and opening the tailgate



TG01434

1. Press and hold the tailgate button (2) on the remote key to unlock the tailgate.

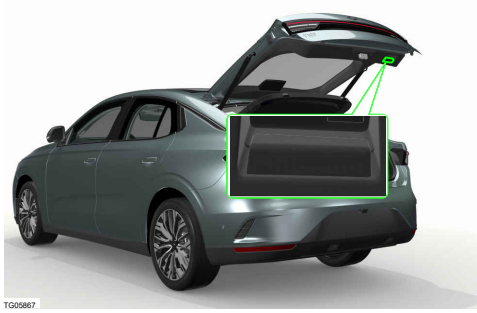

TG05868

2. Lift the tailgate using the soft touch handle to open it.

⚠ ATTENTION

When opening the tailgate, use the handle to lift it. Avoid applying excessive pressure on the touchpad, as this could damage its electrical components.

Closing and locking the tailgate


TG05867

1. Lower the tailgate by pulling it down using the handle. Push firmly to ensure the latch is fully engaged.
2. Press the lock button (3) on the remote key to secure the tailgate.

3.4.2.2 Electric tailgate (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when opening/closing the tailgate as there is a risk of injury. Before opening/closing, make sure that no one is in the path of the tailgate as an injury can occur.

⚠ ATTENTION

When pressing the touchpad, only light pressure is necessary to release the tailgate's electronic locking mechanism.

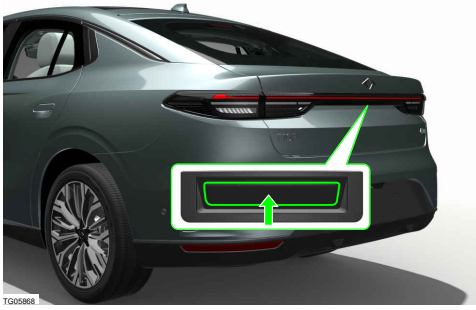
Opening the tailgate

The electric tailgate can be opened by one of the following methods:


TG05869

- Press and hold the button on the remote key until the tailgate begins to open.

  Or


TG05868

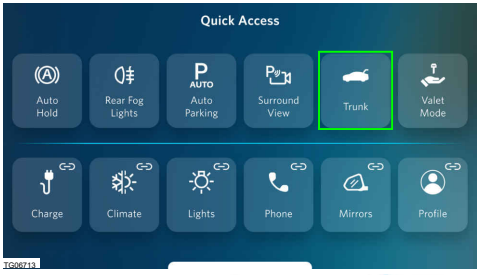
- Press lightly on the soft-touch handle's touchpad.

  Or

When the vehicle is in accessory mode.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access



TG06713

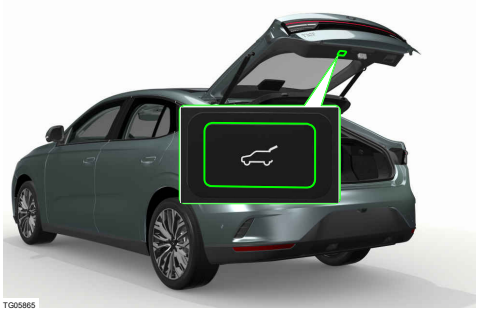
- Tap on the trunk button to open the tailgate.

Closing the tailgate

The electric tailgate can be closed by one of the following methods:

- Press and hold the tailgate button on the remote key to close the tailgate.

  Or


TG05865

- Press the tailgate inside switch to close the tailgate.

INFORMATION

If the remote key is not within range of the tailgate, automatic locking/unlocking/opening/closing will not function.

Interrupting opening/closing

- Press the tailgate button on the remote key.
- Press on the tailgate inside switch.
- Press lightly on the touchpad below the outer tailgate handle.

Adjusting the opening height of the tailgate

1. Press the touchpad on the tailgate. The tailgate will start to open.
2. Press the touchpad again at the desired opening height. The tailgate will stop opening.
3. Long press on the touchpad to store the position.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electric tailgate fault (Icon is steady)

3.5 Anti Theft Alarm

3.5.1 Overview

If the vehicle is accessed without the correct key, the anti-theft alarm is triggered. It provides both audio and visual warning signals. The anti theft alarm system is switched On or Off when locking or unlocking the vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut Off automatically after a certain amount of time.

The following conditions will trigger the alarm:

- A door/hood/tailgate is opened.
- There is a change in the vehicle's angle of inclination, for instance, if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key when the anti-theft alarm is active.

3.5.2 Switching the Anti Theft Alarm System On and Off

The anti theft alarm system is turned On automatically after approximately 1 second in the following situations:

- After locking the vehicle with the card key
- After locking the vehicle with the digital key
- After locking the vehicle using keyless entry
- After locking the vehicle with the walk away or keyless exit

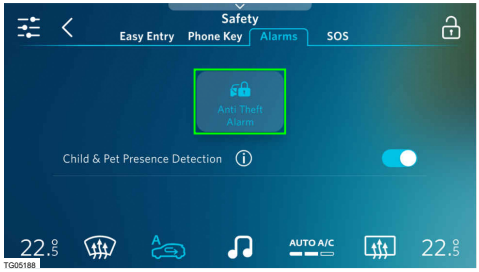
⚠ ATTENTION

Do not leave any of the keys inside the vehicle. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that all keys are secure and the vehicle is properly locked and armed to prevent unauthorized use.

The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked. The anti theft alarm can be turned On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Safety → Alarms



- Tap on the Anti Theft Alarm button to turn On/Off the function.

3.5.3 Switching Off a Triggered (Sounding) Alarm

Triggered antitheft alarm can be switched Off using:

Remote key

Press the Unlock button on the remote key.

Or

Press the Start/Stop button with the remote key in possession and transition the vehicle to Ready state.

Passive entry

With the remote key near the vehicle, press the button of the front door handle.

Card key

Hold the Card key on the RFID reader and unlock the vehicle.

3.5.4 Anti Theft Alarm Indication

The following occurs if the anti theft alarm has been triggered:

- **Audible warning**: The audible warning will sound for 30 seconds or until the anti theft alarm is turned Off.
- **Visual warning**: Hazard warning lights will flash for 5 minutes or until the anti theft alarm is turned Off.

INFORMATION

To safeguard operation of the anti theft alarm system, do not modify the system.

3.5.5 Avoiding False Alarms

The inclination sensor and anti theft alarm system may trigger an alarm even though no unauthorized activity is taking place.

False warnings may occur:

- In washing bays or car washes
- In lifted garages
- When transporting the vehicle via motorail, car ferry or trailer
- When there are pets in the vehicle.

3.7 Sun Visor

3.7.1 Overview

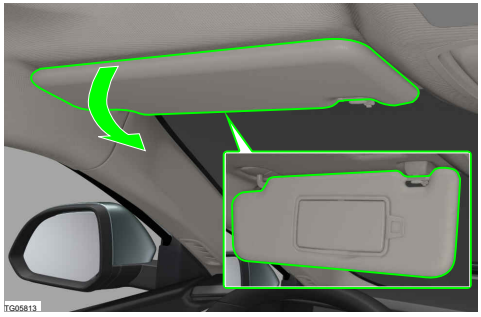
The sun visors can be used to block the glare coming through the windshield or windows.

3.7.2 Adjusting Sun Visor

⚠ ATTENTION

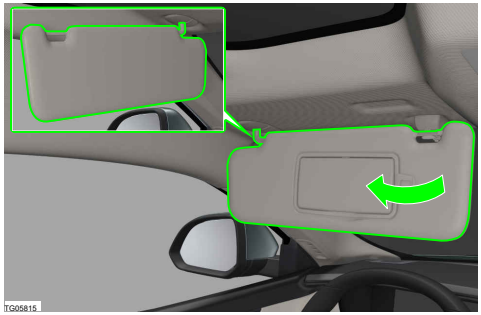
Driving with the sun visors folded down can reduce your view of the road. Sun visors should always be folded away if they are not being used.

Protection from glare at the front



- Swivel the sun visor downwards or upwards to prevent glare from the front.

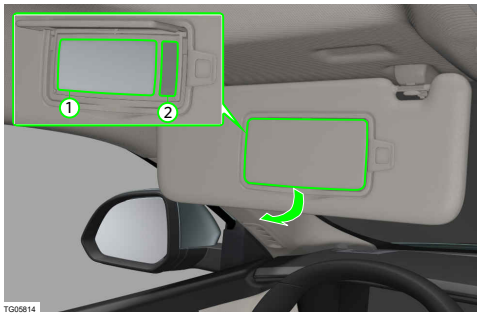
Protection from glare at the side



1. Swivel down the sun visor.
2. Unhook the sun visor from its holder and swivel it sideways to the door window.
3. Slide it back to the desired position.

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

3.7.3 Vanity Mirror



1. Vanity mirror
2. Vanity mirror light

When the sun visor is folded down, there is a vanity mirror with card holder.

The vanity mirror light turns On automatically when the vanity mirror cover is opened.

INFORMATION

- ***Do not put several tickets/cards in the card holder at one time. This could cause damage to the card holder.***
- ***Do not force vanity mirror cover beyond its end position. This could damage the vanity mirror cover.***

⚠ WARNING

If the mirror cover of the vanity mirror is opened when the vehicle is in motion, you could be blinded by incident light. There is a risk of an accident. Always keep the mirror cover closed while driving.

4 Driving & Driver Assistance

4.1 Starting the Vehicle

4.1.1 General Information on Electric Drive

Driving an electric vehicle is similar to driving one with an internal combustion engine. The vehicle runs without emissions, powered by its electric drivetrain.

- The high-voltage battery provides power to the electric motors and the comfort systems.
- The high-voltage battery is charged when parked using a charging cable, for example, or when driving by energy recuperation.
- Charging can be carried out quickly at DC fast charging stations. Also, charging at home with AC wallbox charging unit and AC public charging station outlet is possible.
- While driving, energy recuperation minimizes the energy loss from braking.
- When the vehicle decelerates, the electric motors function as generators, converting kinetic energy into electrical energy. The electrical energy recharge the high-voltage battery to increase the range and helps to brake the vehicle.
- AWD: Both front and rear axle are powered by separate electric motor. This equipped the vehicle with an electrical all-wheel drive.
- RWD: Only rear axle is powered by an electric motor. This equipped the vehicle with an electrical rear-wheel drive.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of accident and injury if the driver is under the influence of alcohol and drugs.

- ***Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs is extremely dangerous. Even a small amount can impair your reflexes, perception, and judgment.***
- ***Consuming alcohol or drugs while driving significantly increases the risk of a serious or fatal accident.***

When driving an electric vehicle, pedestrians and other road users might not become aware of the vehicle as they normally would due to the lack of engine noise, although the vehicle is equipped with AVAS. There is a risk of an accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

4.1.2 Starting the Vehicle with the Start/Stop Button

Starting and driving are possible if the following conditions are met:

- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- Charging cable is disconnected. Make sure that the charging cable is removed and the charger cover is closed before starting the vehicle.
- One of the vehicle keys is inside the vehicle.

INFORMATION

If the driver door is opened or not closed when the gear selector is shifted in "D" mode, the electric parking brake will be engaged automatically.

⚠ ATTENTION

The gear selector must not be used to switch the driving mode while the "P" mode button is being pressed.

⚠ ATTENTION

Before starting:

- ***Fasten your seat belt.***
- ***Adjust the seat, steering wheel, and mirrors.***
- ***Make sure that you are able to fully press the brake pedal.***

1. Fasten your seat belt.
2. Depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.

   The "READY" icon appears on the driver's screen to notify the driver.
3. Put the gear selector in position D or R.

   The vehicle is now ready to move.
4. Release the brake pedal.

4.1.3 Vehicle Modes

The vehicle has the following modes:

Accessory Mode:

The vehicle enters accessory mode when NFC key card is scan on the driver side B-pillar. In accessory mode, both the high-voltage and low-voltage batteries are active.

Ready Mode:

From accessory mode, press the brake pedal and push the Start/Stop button to enter ready mode. The vehicle is now ready for driving.

INFORMATION

The vehicle switches to standby mode if there is an issue with the high-voltage system. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for repairs of high-voltage systems.

Display icons

Icon	Description
READY	Drive ready state active (Icon is steady)
ACCESSORY	Accessory mode On (Icon is steady)
STANDBY	Standby mode On (Icon is steady)

4.1.4 Drive Positions

Use the gear selector to switch the drive position. The brake pedal must be pressed while engaging the drive position from “P”. When the vehicle is ready to drive, the drive modes and selected gear are displayed on the driver’s screen. (*6.2.1.3 Center tile*)

- Park
- Reverse gear
- Neutral
- Drive

"D" Drive Position

Engage the gear selector position to "D" for all normal driving. When the brake pedal is released, the vehicle drives off slowly if the creep mode is active.

"R" Reverse Gear

Only engage the gear selector position to "R" when the vehicle is stationary. If the vehicle speed is more than 0 km/h, it is not possible to select R position.

"N" Neutral

In the gear selector position "N", the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without drivetrain.

"P" Park

In the gear selector position P, the drivetrain is blocked and the electric parking brake is engaged. Press the button (1) to select “P” mode.

⚠ ATTENTION

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the gear selector position P and the electric parking brake are engaged. The vehicle could otherwise start to move.

Electric parking brake can be engaged automatically.

Driving off

Engage a drive position and step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The electric parking brake is automatically released.

4.1.5 Creep Mode

The creep function allows the vehicle to drive away automatically from a standstill when the brake pedal is released and the drive position D or R is selected.

Creep mode will not be activated in the following conditions:

- Electric parking brake is engaged
- Driver seat belt is not fastened
- Driver door is open

If the creep mode is not active due to the above conditions, tip the accelerator pedal to initiate creeping when the conditions are satisfied.

If the vehicle is climbing on uphill or if there is an obstruction to wheel, the creep mode can be automatically disabled. A warning icon will be displayed on the driver’s screen to warn the driver.

INFORMATION

The vehicle moves (creeps) when the drive position is engaged. To prevent unintentional creeping, only release the brake when you want to drive away.

⚠ ATTENTION

If the creep mode is disabled, the vehicle may unintentionally roll backwards (if auto hold is not activated). There is a risk of collision. The driver should always monitor the traffic and road conditions while using the creep mode.

The creep mode can be activated or deactivated using the control display or the gear shifting unit (GSU).

Using the control display:

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Driving Support Systems

2. Tap on the "Creep Mode" button to activate or deactivate the function.

Using the gear shifting unit (GSU):

- Press the button (2) for at least 2 seconds to activate the creep mode (If it is already inactive).
- Press the button (2) for at least 2 seconds to deactivate the creep mode (If it is already active).

Display icon

Icon	Description
	Creep mode disengaged. Obstacle detected on the way.

4.1.6 Switching Off the Vehicle

When the vehicle is at a complete stop:

1. Shift the gear selector to the "P" mode. Electric parking brake is engaged automatically.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users by the following actions:

- ***Pressing the Start/Stop button***
- ***Releasing the electric parking brake***
- ***Opening and closing doors or windows***
- ***Engaging gear selector position N***
- ***Operating vehicle equipments***

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

INFORMATION

When shutting down the vehicle, electrical system operating noises may be heard, for example if the high-voltage battery is being cooled.

4.1.7 Engine Performance Limited

When the vehicle system detects a fault, the engine performance limited mode is automatically activated for the safety of the high-voltage system. The vehicle can still be driven but with limited power. When the fault conditions are healed, the vehicle can be driven normally.

Engine performance can be limited in the following conditions:

- The high-voltage battery is heavily discharged or the voltage is decreasing.
- The temperature of the electric drive unit or the high-voltage battery is too high or too low.
- The electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.
- The brake module is malfunctioning.

- The high-voltage system is malfunctioning.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Engine performance limited warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited error (Icon is steady)

4.2 Cruise Control

4.2.1 Overview

The intelligent cruise control allows you to set a specific speed, which is then maintained by the system. This set speed can be adjusted based on the driver's selection. If the driver accelerates to overtake another vehicle, the system will maintain the set speed, and the speed is not erased. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the system will return to the previously set cruise control speed.

The intelligent cruise control also incorporates a speed limit detection feature. Using the front smart camera, the system detects speed limit signs on the road. When the system recognizes a change in speed limit, it will display the new speed limit on the driver's screen and prompt the driver to adjust the cruise control speed accordingly. The driver can choose to accept or decline the suggested speed change. The system allows the driver to set a speed limit offset via the control display. If the vehicle exceeds the set speed, the system will alert the driver by flashing the speed limiter icon on the driver's screen.

This system is designed for use on long, straight roads, such as highways or main roads with smoothly flowing traffic.

⚠ WARNING

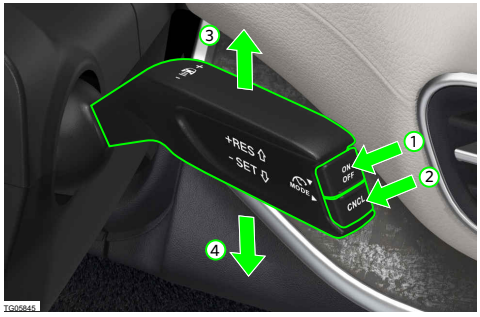
- ***There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. The vehicle must always be driven according to current traffic/road conditions. The driver is responsible to take corrective action if cruise control does not maintain a suitable speed.***
- ***To reduce the risk of an accident, switch the intelligent cruise control Off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or construction zones.***
- ***Do not rely on intelligent cruise control to determine the appropriate speed limit or driving speed. Always drive at a safe speed based on current traffic and road conditions.***

INFORMATION

When the intelligent cruise control is activated, the system will automatically activate the traffic sign recognition function if already deactivated.

4.2.2 Using Intelligent Cruise Control

4.2.2.1 Overview



1. Intelligent cruise control On/Off
2. Cancel intelligent cruise control
3. Resume intelligent cruise control/Increase set speed/Accept set speed
4. Set intelligent cruise control speed/Decrease set speed/Reject set speed

4.2.2.2 Switching cruise control On/Off

1. Select the "Cruise Control" on the driver's screen using right the steering wheel switch.
2. Press the button to turn On/Off the cruise control.

INFORMATION

The vehicle must reach at least 20 km/h speed to activate the cruise control. This is the minimum speed that can be set.

4.2.2.3 Activating the intelligent cruise control

1. Switch on the cruise control. If required, activate the intelligent mode (Intelligent cruise control). (4.2.3 Cruise Control Settings)
2. Accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
3. Press the right stalk down to set the cruise speed.

The set cruise speed is displayed on the driver's screen in green and is maintained automatically.

4.2.2.4 Changing the cruise control speed

- Short press the right stalk up or down to adjust the speed limit in 1 km/h increments.
- Long press the right stalk up or down to adjust the speed limit in 10 km/h increments.

The new maximum speed is displayed on the driver's screen.

INFORMATION

Always observe posted speed limits and current traffic regulations.

4.2.2.5 Resuming set speed

If the intelligent cruise control is set at the desired speed and then the brakes are applied or cancel button (1) is pressed, the intelligent cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

- When the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, briefly press the right stalk up (2). The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

4.2.2.6 Cancelling or resuming intelligent cruise control

- To cancel the intelligent cruise control, press the button (1).

  When you cancel the intelligent cruise control, the cruise speed will be stored.
- To resume stored cruise speed, lift the right stalk up (2).

INFORMATION

- ***If the vehicle is turned Off or restarted, the stored cruise control speed will be erased.***
- ***The intelligent cruise control function is interrupted when any of the electronic stability control (ESC) function is in action.***

⚠ ATTENTION

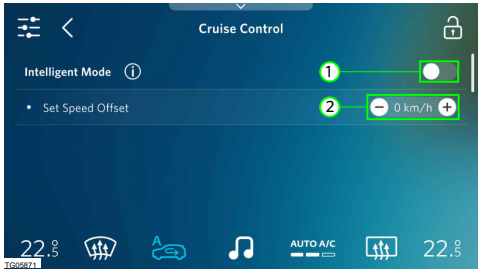
Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the intelligent cruise control.

4.2.3 Cruise Control Settings

Cruise control settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Assist Systems → Cruise Control



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent cruise control mode.
- Press the "+" or "-" button (2) to increase or decrease the speed limit offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

INFORMATION

The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:

- ***Intelligent cruise control***
- ***Adaptive driver assist***
- ***Speed Limiter***
- ***Adaptive cruise control***

If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

4.2.4 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control active but overriden (Icon is flashing)
	Cruise control standby (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control failure (Icon is steady)

4.2.5 Limitations of Intelligent Cruise Control

The intelligent cruise control may not work in the following situations:

- If the speed limit signs are not clearly visible due to heavy rain, snow or fog.
- If the direct sunlight or bright light from oncoming traffic is interfering with the view of the front smart camera.
- If the front smart camera view is blocked when the vehicle is driven very close to the vehicle in front.
- If the speed limit signs are concealed by objects.
- If the speed limits stored in the map database are incorrect or outdated.

The list above does not represent a complete list of situations that may interfere with the proper operation of intelligent cruise control.

4.3 Braking

4.3.1 Overview

The brakes are used to reduce speed or prevent the vehicle from rolling. In addition to the wheel brakes and electric parking brake, the vehicle is also equipped with several brake assist functions.

The vehicle uses an I-Booster instead of a traditional vacuum-assisted brake booster. The I-Booster does not rely on vacuum and uses an electric motor to boost brake pedal force. This system helps increase the driving range of the electric vehicle by approximately 20%.

Brake blending

The brake blending function manages the transition between braking by the electric drive motor during energy recovery (energy recuperation) and mechanical braking applied by the driver. Its goal is to ensure consistent brake pedal feel, whether the vehicle is decelerating using the electric motor or the friction brake.

Automatic brake prefill (ABP)

The automatic brake prefill function shortens braking response and reduces stopping distance by slightly increasing brake system pressure. It activates when the forward collision alert is triggered.

INFORMATION

Noises may occur during braking, depending on factors such as speed, braking force, and external conditions like temperature and humidity. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with the vehicle.

⚠ ATTENTION

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and It is recommended that a Togg authorized service should check them.

4.3.2 Using Brakes

The response time from brakes depends on weather and environmental conditions. To ensure optimal braking effect, brake systems must be cleaned regularly. This can be performed by applying brake for a short period of time while driving.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of accident. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when current road and traffic condition allows to perform.

On wet roads

Prolonged driving in heavy rain without braking may cause braking effect to be slightly delayed for the first time when the brakes are applied. This may also occur after washing the vehicle. It will then be necessary to apply greater pressure to the brake pedal. You should therefore maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Firmly apply the brakes after washing the vehicle or driving on wet roads. This helps warm up the brake discs, enabling them to dry more quickly and protecting them against corrosion. Consider the current traffic situation when braking.

On salted roads

While driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may get accumulate on brake disc and brake pads, which could increase the stopping distance.

To reduce the risk of collision and damage to other road user, make sure to apply brakes time to time to remove salt.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a water wedge can form between the tires and the road. This phenomenon is known as aquaplaning and can cause the tire to lose contact partially or fully with the road surface, meaning that the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes be properly applied.

INFORMATION

Always maintain extra safety distance from the vehicle ahead while driving on loose gravel, muddy or snow-covered roads.

4.3.3 Brake Maintenance

To keep the vehicle as safe and reliable as possible, follow the service schedule. After replacing brake pads and brake discs, full braking effect is not achieved until the vehicle is driven for few hundred kilometers. Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater pressure to the brake pedal. It is always recommended to use Togg approved parts. Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

A warning symbol indicates to the driver to change the brake pads if they are worn.

Icon	Description
	Change brake pads (Icon is steady)

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake disc if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. During braking, corroded brake discs may cause juddering, which usually cannot be eliminated.

4.3.4 Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

The vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS), which helps to prevent the wheels from locking and helps to maintain steering control when braking. Vibrations may be felt from the brake pedal when the anti-lock braking system is operating, which is normal.

Icon	Description
	Anti-lock braking system failure (Icon is steady)

WARNING

- ***Do not pump the brake pedal. Doing so may result in increased stopping distances.***
- ***You should drive responsibly. The anti-lock braking system do not reduce the risk of accident in case of inappropriate driving speed.***
- ***Stopping distance on slippery, gravel or snow cover roads will be greater as compared to normal roads. Always maintain safe distance from the vehicle ahead.***

WARNING

If the warning symbols for both brake fault and anti-lock braking system fault are illuminated simultaneously, there may be a fault in the brake system. It is recommended that you visit a Togg authorized service for the inspection.

Cornering stability control (CSC)

When the vehicle travels at high speeds, every movement of the steering wheel makes a tremendous difference in direction. The cornering stability control function is activated when it senses that the vehicle is taking a turn on a sharp corner. It adjusts the braking force on each wheel to help maintain a stable driving path and keep the vehicle under control.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system increases braking force to help reduce stopping distance. It monitors the vehicle speed, brake pedal travel, and brake pedal travel increase rate to detect emergency braking. If the driver does not press the pedal hard enough, the system automatically applies full braking force. In this situation, the anti-lock braking system (ABS) also provides added benefits.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

Electronic brake force distribution adjusts the brake force applied to each wheel to help stabilize the vehicle according to dynamic axle loads during braking.

4.3.5 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic stability control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive torque and by brake intervention on individual wheels.

WARNING

- ***Always drive carefully and attentively.***
- ***Never solely rely on the hill start assist system to prevent the vehicle from moving backward on a hill.***

ATTENTION

Be careful while stopping on frozen or muddy roads.

Torque request

The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) works with the powertrain to reduce torque if regenerative braking causes the vehicle to become unstable. In this situation, the system can adjust the torque to stabilize the vehicle.

Automatic traction control

The automatic traction control reduces drive output if wheel spin occurs and adjusts it to match road surface conditions. This feature helps make it easier to start, accelerate, drive uphill, and handle difficult terrain, such as loose gravel, snow, or mud.

Hill start assist/Auto hold

The hill start assist function automatically maintains brake pressure to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward. This happens when the driver releases the brake pedal and presses the accelerator while the vehicle is stopped on a slope. The function retains pressure from the brake pedal in the brake system for several seconds after the brake pedal has been released.

ATTENTION

- ***If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may begin to roll backward. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control.***
- ***The hill start assist cannot hold the vehicle on inclines in every scenario (e.g. on slippery or icy ground). Be ready to always apply the brakes when using the hill start assist.***

Hill descent control

Hill descent control helps maintain a steady speed when driving downhill by automatically applying the brakes to all four wheels, keeping the vehicle steerable. You can always adjust the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals. The system's performance varies based on the slope and vehicle speed.

Roll over mitigation

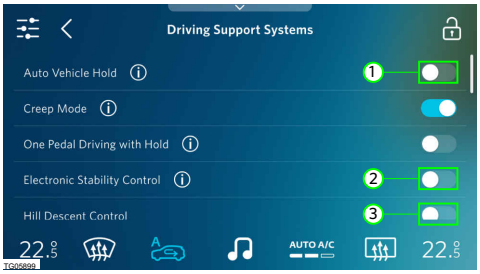
The system helps to prevent rollovers by detecting vehicle's roll motion, and individually applying the brakes to one or more wheels.

Activating and deactivating electronic stability control functions

The electronic stability control functions can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Driving Support Systems



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the auto vehicle hold.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the electronic stability control.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the hill descent control.

INFORMATION

Electronic stability control (ESC) can be re-activated in order to keep vehicle stability and above certain vehicle speed.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electronic stability control malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Electronic stability control in control (Icon is flashing)
	Auto hold active (Icon is steady)
	Auto hold failure (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control active (Icon is flashing)
	Hill descent control enabled (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control failure (Icon is steady)

4.3.6 Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake (EPB) is used to secure the vehicle against unintentional rolling when it is parked. Electric parking brake indicator lights up on the driver's screen.

WARNING

- ***Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users. There is a risk of injury or even death.***
- ***When leaving the parked vehicle, take the key with you and lock the vehicle.***

INFORMATION

When the electric parking brake is being applied or released, a faint sound can be heard from the brake's electric motor.

Activating the electric parking brake

1. Lift up the electric parking brake switch.

Releasing the electric parking brake manually

1. Turn On the vehicle.

2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press on the electric parking brake switch.

Roll away protection

The electric parking brake activates when the vehicle stops and the door is opened, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. The electric parking brake indicator lights up on the driver's screen.

Auto drive

The system releases the electric parking brake when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while the seat belt is fastened and all doors and trunk is closed, without manually releasing the electric parking brake.

Electric parking brake malfunction

If the electric parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Electric parking brake failure (Icon is flashing)
	Electric parking brake engaged or Electronic brake force distribution warning (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent brake booster service warning or regenerative brake control service warning (Icon is steady)

4.3.7 Multi-Collision Brake

The multi-collision brake automatically controls the brake in an incident where the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of further accidents. In case of a primary collision with or without airbag deployment, the braking system is notified to decelerate the vehicle and bring the vehicle to a standstill.

4.4 Parking and Maneuvering

4.4.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of an accident or injury from an insufficiently secured vehicle. Always make sure the vehicle is secured when parking on uphill or downhill grades. Turn the front wheels towards the curb to prevent rolling if the vehicle starts moving.***
- ***If a person stays in the vehicle for extended periods and is exposed to very high temperatures, there is a risk of injury or risk to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.***
- ***Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident or injury if the children set the vehicle in motion by releasing the electric parking brake or operating the vehicle equipment.***
- ***There is a risk of injury or accident when using park assist and approaching at high speeds. Warning can occur late due to system limits. Avoid maneuvering the vehicle at high speeds when using the park assist.***

4.4.2 Parking the Vehicle

Follow the below procedure when parking the vehicle:

1. Apply the brake to bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Apply the electric parking brake and shift the gear selector to the "P" mode.
3. Turn Off the vehicle by pressing Start/Stop button.
4. Get out of the vehicle and lock the vehicle.

4.4.3 Park Assist

4.4.3.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

The park assist system is only to assist you in parking and maneuvering the vehicle. Due to system limits, it may not respond in all situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to the surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic law.

The park assist system is an electronic parking aid that will assist you to park your vehicle safely when maneuvering in tight parking spaces. It provides audio and visual information on the main screen and driver's screen.

The color of the segments on the display changes depending on the distance to the detected obstacle:

Green : > 0.6 m

Yellow : approx. 0.6 m – 0.3 m

Red : < 0.3 m

The closer your vehicle comes to the obstacle, the closer the segments will move to the vehicle.

4.4.3.2 Front/Rear park assist


TG06650

When the front assist function is activated and vehicle speed is below 15 km/h, the ultrasonic sensors will detect the proximity of an obstacle from the front or rear bumper and this information is displayed on the main screen and driver's screen.

The top view of the vehicle with respect to the detected object is displayed on the main screen and driver's screen. The segments change the color as the distance between the object and the vehicle is changed.

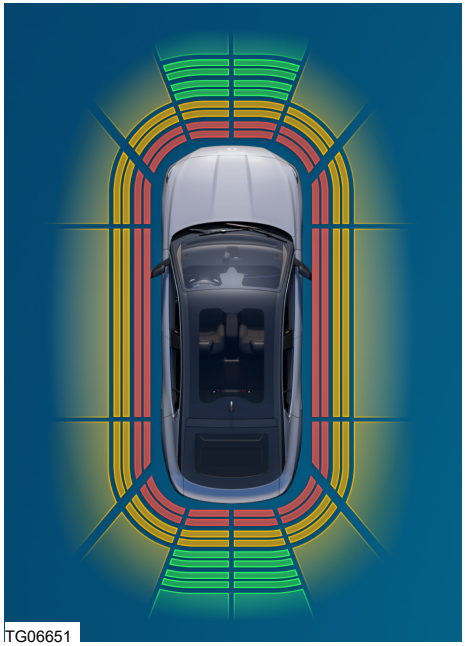
The detection range of the system is approximately 150 cm for rear and 120 cm for front, depending on the surrounding. A continuous acoustic warning will be provided when the object is detected approximately 30 cm from the vehicle and collision is imminent.

The front park assist function can be activated and deactivated using the control display.

The function works with the help of:

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors

4.4.3.3 Side park assist (if equipped)


TG06651

The side park assist function warns you of any obstacles detected to the side. The obstacles must be detected in advance by the front or rear ultrasonic sensors while driving by them. If the vehicle is steered in the direction of a detected obstacle and a lateral collision is imminent, an audio and visual warning is issued.

To display the obstacles on all sides, the vehicle must travel a distance of one vehicle length. The detection range of the system is approximately 60 cm from the sides, depending on the surrounding.

The side park assist function can be activated and deactivated using the control display.

The function works with the help of:

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors
- Side ultrasonic sensors

4.4.3.4 Park assist icons

Icon	Description
	Side park assist

	Park in
	Park out right
	Park out left
	Park assist view

4.4.3.5 Activating/Deactivating the park assist

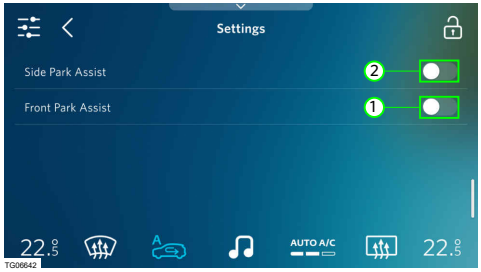
The park assist function is automatically activated when:

- The vehicle is turned On.
- The gear selector is shifted to "R" mode.
- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h and an approaching object is detected.

The manual activation/deactivation of the park assist function can be controlled using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Settings



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the front park assist function.

INFORMATION

Front park assist is always re-activated automatically when the gear selector is shifted to "R" mode.

- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the side park assist function.

4.4.3.6 Park assist limitations

Due to system limits, the park assist function may not work in the following situations:

- When the objects are at a higher level, for example, protruding ramps.
- In case of small and low objects, such as boxes.
- When the ultrasonic sensors are covered with stickers or foils.
- If the sensors are misaligned, damaged, incorrectly installed or painted after repair work.
- In weather conditions such as snow, strong wind and extreme heat or cold.
- In case of moving, thin or sharp objects.
- When external ultrasonic sounds interfere, for example, loud machines or passing vehicles.
- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of objects with porous surfaces.
- In case of small children and animals.

Side park assist limitation

For the side of the vehicle, the system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them when the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

4.4.3.7 Malfunction in ultrasonic park assist

Message on driver's screen	Description
Ultrasonic park assist failure detected	Park assist malfunction

Ultrasonic parking failure message will be displayed on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service for system checked and corrected.

4.4.4 Auto Parking (if equipped)

4.4.4.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

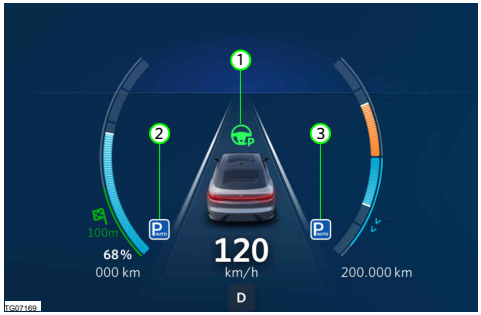
The auto park function is only to assist you in parking and maneuvering the vehicle. Due to system limits, it may not respond in all the situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to the surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic law.

The auto parking function assists the driver to park in and out of the parking spaces. The ultrasonic sensors monitor and detect the parking space. The steering and braking actions of the vehicle are controlled by

the system to maneuver the vehicle into and out of the parking space.

Information about the actions required by the driver is provided on the driver's screen, control display, and main screen in the form of symbols, images, and text.

Driver screen display



1. Auto parking is in progress.
2. A parking slot is available on the left side.
3. A parking slot is available on the right side.

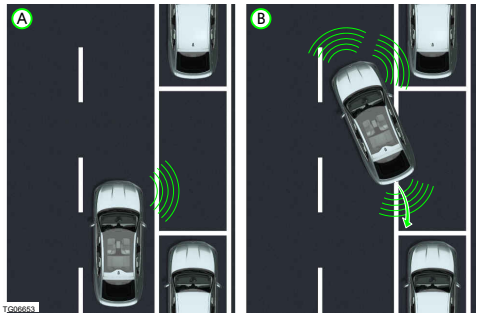
When the park assist function is activated by the driver, it starts to search for a parking slot. The slot search is activated when 'Auto Parking' is selected from the 'Main Controls' screen on the control display. After selecting the parking slot, the automatic parking maneuver starts. (4.4.4.2 Parking in the vehicle (Park In))

Display icons

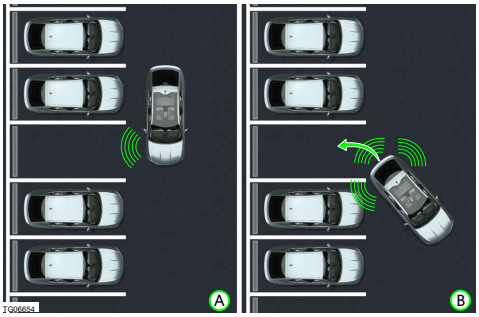
Icon	Description
	Parking slot found indication (Icon is steady)
	Auto parking is in progress (Icon is steady)

The following are the available parking methods:

1. Parallel parking



2. Perpendicular parking



Following steps are involved in auto parking:

1. Searching parking space (A)
2. Activating the function
3. Parking the vehicle (B)
4. Leaving the parking space

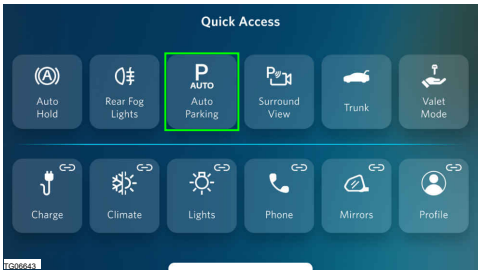
4.4.4.2 Parking in the vehicle (Park In)

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Auto Parking

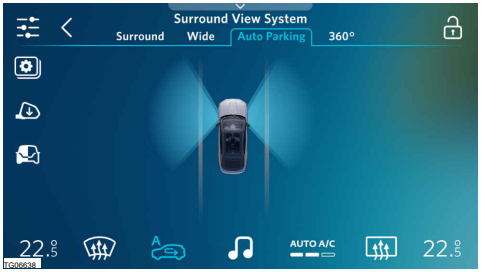
or

Control Display → Quick Access

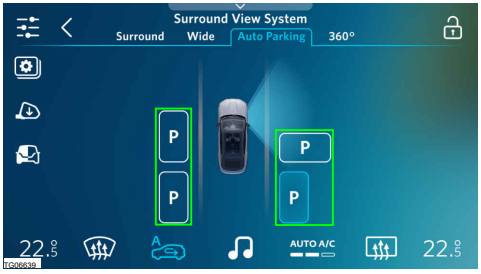


Press the auto parking button.

The auto parking overlay appears on the main screen, and the system starts to search for parking slots.



2. Drive the vehicle parallel to and less than 1 m away from the other parked vehicles when searching for the parking space. If any slot is found, it is indicated on the driver's screen with the parking slot found indication. The possible parking slots will also be displayed on the control display.
3. Stop the vehicle and select the desired parking slot while pressing the brake pedal and follow the instructions on the main screen and allow the vehicle to park in automatically.



4. The auto park in completion is indicated on the main screen. If required, adjust the parking position and select the shift lever to "P" mode.

INFORMATION

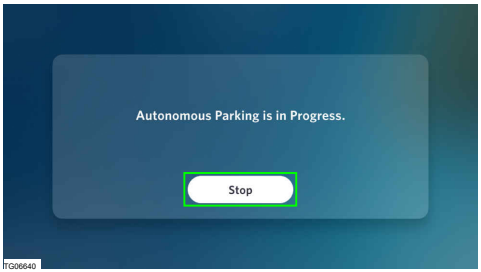
The hazard warning light is switched On automatically when the auto park in procedure begins.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic parking slot search function searches for objects around and detects empty slots in between those objects. Due to this principle, sometimes misleading parking slot found indications may occur. The parking slot found notifications should only be considered when parking slot is being searched and there are real parking slots around.

4.4.4.3 Ending the auto park in

When the auto parking is in progress the below screen is displayed on the control display.



- Tap on the stop button to end the auto parking maneuver manually.

4.4.4.4 Leaving the parking space (Park Out)

⚠ WARNING

The auto park out function is to only assist you while leaving the parallel parking spaces when the distance to other parked vehicles is tight. Due to system limits, it cannot respond in all situations. It is not a substitute for your attention to your surroundings and does not relieve you of your responsibility pertaining to road traffic laws. The driver is solely responsible for taking care of oncoming traffic in all directions when the vehicle automatically parks out.

INFORMATION

The auto park out function should only be used to park out the vehicle from parallel parking spaces.

The auto park out function assists the driver to exit the parking space when the vehicle is parked parallel.

Requirements:

- The vehicle is recently turned On, i.e., the Start/ Stop button is turned On, and the vehicle's state is transitioned to "Ready".
- The vehicle is stationary, the electric parking brake is engaged, and the gear state is "P" or "N".
- There is an object detected at the front of the vehicle at a distance of less than 120 cm.
- There is no object detected at the side of the vehicle e.g. a wall or car.

The auto park out function and the "Park Out Left" and "Park Out Right" buttons are enabled only if the above conditions are satisfied.

INFORMATION

- ***The gear selector must be in "N" mode and the electric parking brake must be released before starting the auto park out operation.***
- ***If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, the park out function is disabled. Restart the vehicle to enable the park-out function.***

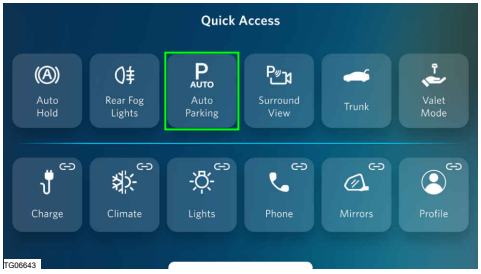
Follow the below instructions to auto park out:

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Auto Parking

   Or

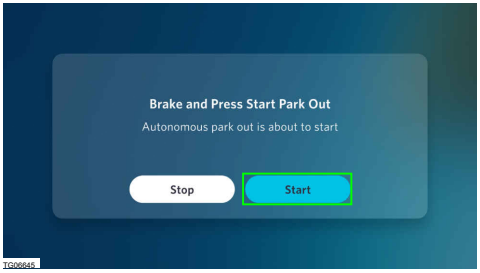
   Control Display → Quick Access



   Press the auto parking button.

   The auto parking overlay appears on the control display, and the system displays possible parking out options.

2. Select the desired parking out direction.
3. Press the start button while pressing the brake pedal.
4. When the park out operation starts, release the brake pedal and allow the vehicle to automatically park out.



5. The auto park out completion is indicated on the main screen.

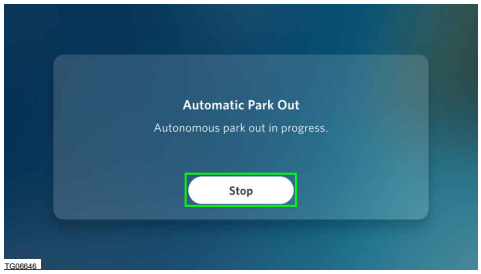
   At the end of operation, the vehicle gear state "P" is selected and electric parking brake is engaged for safety. The driver shall take the control, shift the gear selector to "D" and continue driving.

INFORMATION

The hazard warning light is switched On automatically when the auto park out procedure begins.

4.4.4.5 Ending the auto park out

When the auto park out is in progress below screen is displayed on the control display.



- Tap on the stop button to end the auto park out maneuver manually.

4.4.4.6 Cancelling the auto parking

The auto parking will be cancelled if:

- The vehicle is steered manually.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- Any object is detected in the parking space, which makes parking maneuver impossible.
- You exit the auto parking function on the main screen.

The auto parking will be suspended in the following situations and the driver needs to press the auto parking button on the main screen to continue after the suspend condition is cleared:

- If the door is opened.
- If the gear selector is handled by the driver.
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed by the driver.
- If the electric parking brake is applied.

The auto parking will be suspended in the following situation and will continue automatically after the suspend condition is cleared:

- If the brake pedal is pressed.

4.4.4.7 Auto parking limitations

Auto parking does not work:

- On sharp bends
- If any of the ultrasonic sensors is not working
- On uneven roads or slippery surfaces
- On roads where slope is greater than 15°

4.4.4.8 Malfunction in auto parking

Message on driver's screen	Description
Auto park assist failure detected	Park assist malfunction

Auto parking failure message will be displayed on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service for system checked and corrected.

4.4.5 Surround View (if equipped)

4.4.5.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

- ***The driver is always responsible for monitoring the area around the vehicle. The surround view feature is only to assist the driver and it does not relieve the driver from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly.***
- ***Make sure there are no children or animals in the surrounding area of the vehicle when maneuvering and parking the vehicle. There is a risk of accident or injury in case of distraction.***
- ***The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.***

The surround view feature provides a bird's eye view of the vehicle. It helps when parking or maneuvering the vehicle by displaying different camera perspectives on the main screen.

Cross-traffic Warning: depending on the vehicle configuration, a warning on the main screen is also shown for vehicles that are approaching at the sides from the rear.

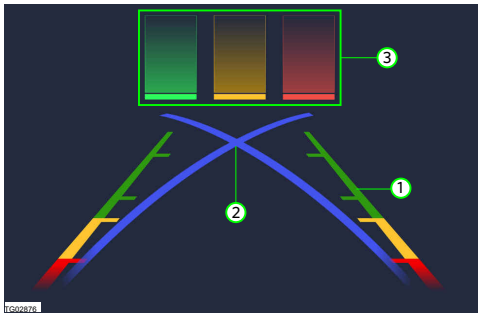
The surround view feature works by evaluating the images from the following cameras:

- Front surround view camera
- Rearview camera
- Surround view camera on the mirrors

For more information, 6.10.1 External Cameras

4.4.5.2 Parking guidelines

Parking guidelines display's the anticipated vehicle trajectory and detected obstacles based on the current vehicle position. It assists while parking and maneuvering the vehicle in tight parking spaces on level roads.



1. Fixed lines
2. Turning lines
3. 3D obstacles

The fixed lines help you to estimate the distance to an obstacle while driving the vehicle in the reverse direction. Obstacles in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and obstacles in the green zone are farther away. Obstacles get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

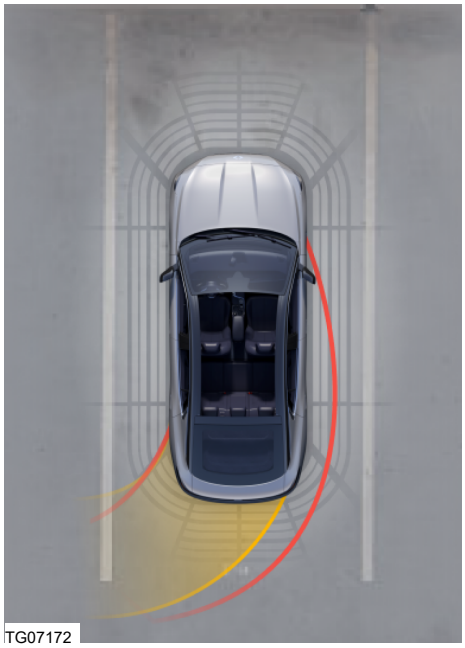
The turning lines display the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path, the guidelines are continuously adapted depending on the steering wheel angle.

The 3D obstacle markings highlight the obstacles around the vehicle detected by the ultrasonic sensors by superimposing the 3D obstacle markings on the camera image. Depending upon the distance between the obstacle and your vehicle, the 3D obstacle markings are highlighted through green, yellow, and to red coloring.

Trajectory lines

⚠ ATTENTION

Please note that the trajectory lines display the shortest path. Be sure that the vehicle's sides do not come into contact with or scrape against any obstacle/obstruction when the steering wheel is turned while driving forward or that the front of the vehicle does not come into contact with or scrape against any obstacle/obstruction when backing up.


TG07172

Trajectory lines are displayed behind, in front of or to the sides of the vehicle depending upon the direction of travel. It assists while taking turn or parking the vehicle in tight parking space.

The trajectory lines will only be shown when the top view is active on main screen.

4.4.5.3 Surround view system icons

Icon	Description
	Surround view
	Parking view
	Camera view. Use to select an alternative camera view in 360° mode.
	360° view
	Auto parking view

	Wide angle view
	Front down view
	Rear down view
	Front view
	Rear view
	Left side view
	Right side view
	Front tire view
	Rear tire view
	Jelly view
	Mirror adjustment down. Adjusts mirror to display the kerb or other objects near the ground.
	Close. Deactivate park assist for the current parking maneuver.
	Moving obstacle warning
	Cross traffic alert right
	Cross traffic alert left

4.4.5.4 Activating and deactivating the surround view system

- **Automatic**

Activating

Shift the gear selector to the R position when the vehicle is ready to drive.

Deactivating

When the vehicle is driven in the forward direction, the surround view camera will deactivate automatically as the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h.

Also, the surround view camera will automatically deactivate after 10 seconds of shifting the gear selector to the P position.

- **Manual**

Surround view camera can be activated or deactivated manually using the control display when the vehicle mode is accessory or ready.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System

1. Select the desired view on the control display or main screen.

   The icon for the active view is highlighted.
2. To deactivate, tap on the close camera view button on the control display or close button on the main screen.

- **Temporary disable**

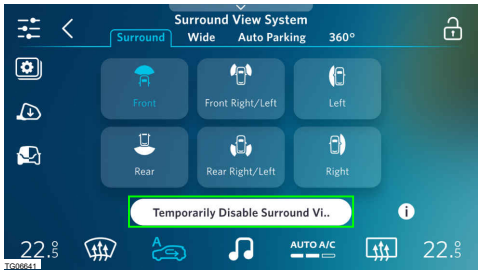
When the ultrasonic sensors detect any object, the surround view system is activated to alert the driver. This function can be temporarily disabled using the control display to avoid driver distraction while driving.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System → Surround

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Surround

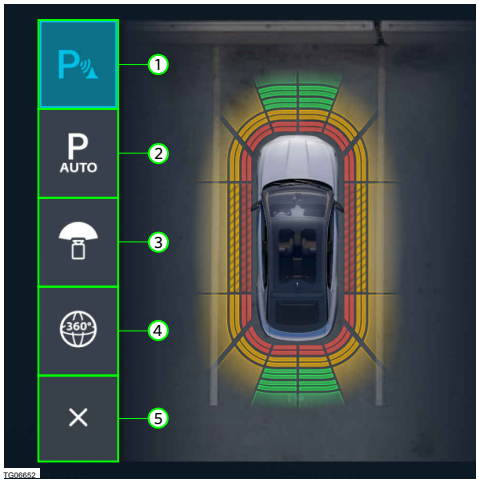


- Tap on the temporarily disable surround view system button to disable the activation of the surround view system temporarily.

4.4.5.5 Camera views

Different camera views can be selected based on the requirement using the control display and main screen. The icon for the active view is highlighted.

When the parking view is active, the below view is displayed on the main screen.



1. Parking View
2. Auto Parking View
3. Wide Angle View
4. 360° View
5. Close Surround View

- **Parking View**

The parking view displays an image of the vehicle surrounding with the parking guidelines on the main screen. The view is displayed by using the information collected by the ultrasonic sensors and surround view cameras.

Four cameras capture the area around the vehicle, and it is displayed in various selectable views.

Depending on the user's requirements, alternative camera views can be manually selected using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System → Surround

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Surround

The following views can be selected:

- Front view
- Rear view
- Left side view
- Right side view
- Front tire view
- Rear tire view

Depending on the view, the vehicle surrounding or a partial area will be displayed. If the parking guidelines are active, the selected side will be displayed with guidelines to assist the driver.

- **Auto Parking View**

Auto parking view can be activated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System → Auto Parking

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Auto Parking

For details, 4.4.4 Auto Parking (if equipped)

- **Wide Angle View**

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side may not be seen from the driver's seat until very late. The front view camera and the rearview camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve the view.

Wide angle view can be activated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System → Wide

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → Wide

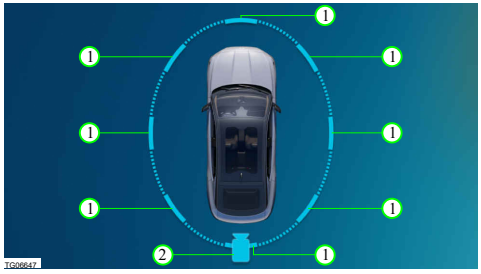
The following views can be selected on the control display when the wide angle view is activated:

- Front Wide View
- Rear Wide View
- Rear Down View
- Front Down View

The rear down view assists the driver when hitching the trailer by displaying rear view from top with the guidelines.

The front down view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and vehicle travel path.

- **360° View**



The 360° view displays the vehicle surrounding along the front, rear, and sides of the vehicle, when active. Different views of the vehicle can be displayed by touching at different camera angles (1). The camera view icon (2) is displayed on the selected view and an image is displayed on the main screen.

Alternatively, swipe on the main screen left or right to change the camera view.

360° view can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System → 360°

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System → 360°

- To exit the 360° view function, select another camera function or tap on the close camera view button on the control display or close button on the main screen.

Changing camera view with steering wheel switches:

When the 360° view is activated, below information appears in the left and right tiles on the driver's screen.

- Change the camera views of the vehicle using the left or right steering wheel switches.

- **Jelly View**

When the jelly view is activated, a transparent vehicle image is displayed on the main screen.

Jelly view can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Surround View System

Or

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Surround View System

- Tap on the jelly view button to activate/deactivate the jelly view.

4.4.5.6 Surround view system limits

The surround view system will not function properly or function partially in the following cases:

- The tailgate is open
- Any of the door is open
- An outside mirror is not completely folded out
- The camera lens is obstructed or dirty
- If the camera or component where camera is installed are damaged
- Poor light condition
- Poor visibility e.g., fog, rain or snow

4.4.6 Rearview Camera

The rearview camera provides a view of the area behind the vehicle on the main screen. The feature helps to maneuver the vehicle while parking in reverse.

The rearview camera can be used when the vehicle is in a ready to drive state.

Activating and deactivating the rearview camera

- **Automatic**

Activating

Shift the gear selector to the R position when the vehicle is ready to drive.

Deactivating

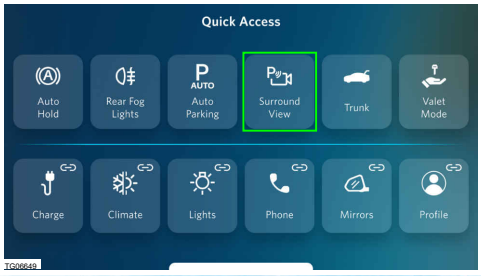
When the vehicle is driven in the forward direction, the rearview camera will deactivate automatically as the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h or after 10 seconds.

- **Manual**

Rearview camera can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access



- Tap on the surround view system button to activate/deactivate the rearview camera.

4.5 Drive Mode

4.5.1 Overview

The vehicle offers different driving modes. The driver has the option to choose the mode to get optimum vehicle performance in different driving conditions. Depending on the chosen mode, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, driver's screen graphics, ambient lighting, interior sound, handling and powertrain response.

4.5.2 Drive Mode Controls

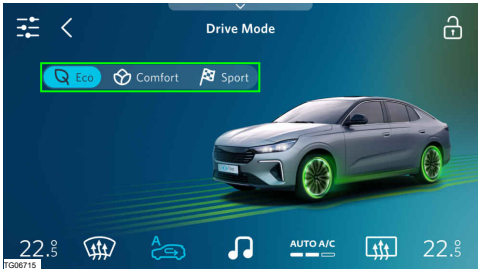
The drive modes can be controlled with the gear shifting unit (GSU) or the control display.

"Comfort" is the default driving mode. The driver can select other modes based on driving conditions and preferences.

Selecting drive mode using the control display,

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Drive Mode



- Tap on the button to select the desired drive mode.

Selecting drive mode using the Gear Shift Unit (GSU),

1. Press both the left (2) and right (1) buttons for 3 seconds at the same time. The drive mode selection menu will then appear on the control display.

INFORMATION

When the gear shift unit buttons are released, the drive mode selection menu will appear on the control display for at least 5 seconds.

2. Select the desired drive mode using the control display or GSU buttons (1) or (2).

4.5.3 Eco

The eco mode helps reduce power consumption by decreasing accelerator pedal response compared to the same accelerator pedal position in other modes.It can be used to achieve maximum driving range.

4.5.4 Comfort

The comfort mode is the default setting for the vehicle systems, offering a comfort-oriented setup. It is suitable for everyday use, poor roads or long motorway journeys.

4.5.5 Sport

Sport mode enhances driving performance with improved handling and responsiveness. It increases acceleration response, making the vehicle accelerate faster and providing a sportier steering feel.

4.5.6 Tips for Increasing Economy

- Keep tires inflated to the correct pressure.
- Keep wheels in correct alignment.
- Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- Drive at a constant speed. Maintain cruising speeds with a constant accelerator position or by using cruise control when appropriate.
- Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Gently press and release the accelerator pedal for acceleration and deceleration.
- Turn Off the air conditioner/heater when it is not necessary.
- Release accelerator pedal to slow down and do not apply the brakes when traffic and road conditions allow. The vehicle is equipped with regenerative braking, it helps recharging the high-voltage battery.

4.6 One Pedal Drive with Hold (if equipped)

4.6.1 Overview

The one pedal drive with hold function aims to bring the vehicle to a complete stop comfortably without using the brake pedal. The feature allows the driver to drive the vehicle using the accelerator pedal only. It relies on the regenerative braking to slow down the vehicle once the accelerator pedal is released. When the vehicle speed is below 5 km/h, the function helps to bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

The vehicle's speed depends on the position of the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle continues to drive at a constant speed. As the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle slows down and comes to a complete stop, depending on the level of recuperation. (*4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation*)

The one pedal drive with hold function operates only when the driver seat belt is fastened.

⚠ WARNING

The one pedal drive with hold feature does not relieve the driver from judging the braking distance. There is a risk of collision, make sure to press the brake pedal when necessary.

4.6.2 Activating/Deactivating the One Pedal Drive with Hold

The one pedal drive with hold can be activated or deactivated using the control display or the gear shifting unit (GSU).

INFORMATION

When activated for the first time during the current drive cycle, the user must exceed the vehicle speed threshold of 7 km/h or perform a full stop by applying the brake pedal. After that, the function will engage and remain operational for the rest of the cycle unless it's deactivated by the user or an error occurs

Using the control display:

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Driving Support Systems

- Tap on the one pedal drive with hold button to activate or deactivate the one pedal drive with hold function.

Using the gear shifting unit (GSU):

- Press the button for at least 2 seconds to activate the one pedal drive with hold function if it is inactive.
- Press the button for at least 2 seconds to deactivate the one pedal drive with hold function if it is already active.

The activation or deactivation of the one pedal drive with hold will be permanent unless the setting is changed.

The activation and in action status of the one pedal drive with hold function is displayed on the driver's screen.

INFORMATION

The one pedal drive with hold and hill descent control functions cannot operate at the same time. If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

INFORMATION

The one pedal drive with hold function can be used with any recuperation level. To ensure a shorter stopping distance, it is suggested to select the recuperation level as medium or high. (4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation)

Display icons

Icon	Description
	One pedal drive with hold active (Icon is steady)
	One pedal drive with hold is braking the vehicle (Icon is steady)

INFORMATION

When the vehicle starts moving after a complete stop (after a successful one pedal drive cycle), the display icon color changes from "Green" to "White".

4.6.3 Limitations of One Pedal Drive with Hold

One pedal drive with hold function is limited when

- The slope is too steep
- The recuperation is limited e.g., due to high-voltage battery state of charge is high
- There is a malfunction in the brake module

When vehicle stability functions like anti-lock braking system or electronic stability control are in action, the one pedal drive with hold feature will be temporarily unavailable.

INFORMATION

When creep mode is activated, it overrides the one pedal drive with hold function. Once creep mode is deactivated, one pedal drive with hold will re-engage, provided there are no other limiting conditions.

4.7 Energy Recuperation

4.7.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Do not solely depend upon recuperation to brake the vehicle to stand still in traffic situations. If required, apply extra pressure on the brake pedal.***
- ***Always be ready to brake and stay a safe distance away from the vehicle in front.***

⚠ ATTENTION

The recuperation can be limited depending on the high-voltage battery state of charge and environment temperature. The hydraulic brake

efforts will increase if the state of charge is at a higher level and the braking effect due to recuperation will be lesser.

- ***It is advised not to fully charge the high-voltage battery at high elevations, e.g., at the top of a pass, to facilitate a braking effect by means of recuperation when descending.***
- ***Reduce your speed before driving down a long, steep gradient.***
- ***When driving down a long, steep gradient, slow down the vehicle using the vehicle brake.***

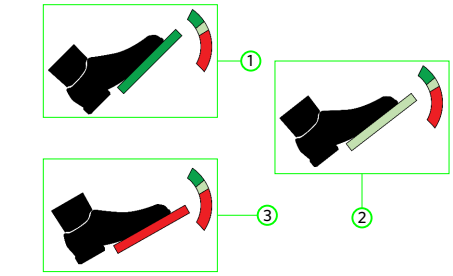
4.7.2 Recuperation

The vehicle recovers the energy by using the recuperation function. The electrical drive unit operates like a generator and converts a large portion of kinetic energy into electrical energy that is stored in the high-voltage battery when braking the vehicle.

The braking effect generated by low level recuperation is similar to the engine braking effect on a vehicle with an internal combustion engine. Recuperation level medium and high generates a more aggressive braking effect than vehicles with an internal combustion engine.

The function works automatically when you release the accelerator pedal or when you press the brake pedal while driving with the gear selector in the "D" or "R" mode.

Accelerator pedal position



TG06718

When energy recuperation is active, the accelerator pedal responds differently.

1. Low Pedal Position (Recuperation): When the accelerator pedal is lightly pressed, the vehicle enters recuperation mode. In this region, the vehicle slows down, and energy is recovered and sent to the high-voltage battery.
2. Middle Pedal Position (Coasting) : In this region, the vehicle coasts, maintaining speed without accelerating or decelerating. No energy is used or recovered.
3. High Pedal Position (Acceleration) : Pressing the pedal more deeply activates propulsion, using energy from the high-voltage battery to accelerate the vehicle.

4.7.3 Levels of Recuperation

1. **Off**

   No recuperation will be applied and the vehicle will free roll when the accelerator pedal is released.

2. **Low**

   The rate of energy recovery is low and the vehicle decelerates less powerfully.

3. **Medium**

   The rate of energy recovery is medium and the vehicle will slow down moderately.

4. **High**

   High amount of energy is recovered and the vehicle decelerates powerfully.

5. **Automatic**

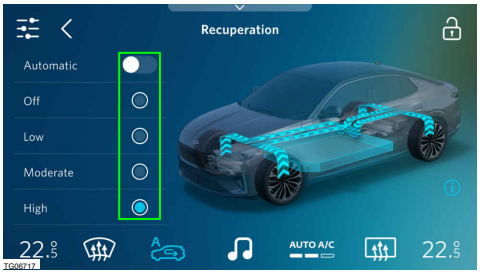
   The function aims to find the minimum regen for energy efficiency on highways and the appropriate regen acceleration for comfortable driving on urban roads.Based on the driving situation (such as distance and relative speed between ego and the vehicle in the front) , system determines whether to recover energy via recuperation or allow vehicle to coast. The strength of recuperation affects the deceleration during coasting.

4.7.4 Adjusting Recuperation Level

The level of recuperation can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Recuperation



- Tap to select the desired level of recuperation or deactivate the recuperation function.

Or

- Select the desired level of recuperation or deactivate the recuperation function using the gear shift unit buttons (1) or (2).

4.8 Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) (if equipped)

4.8.1 Driver Attention Assist

4.8.1.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Driver is always responsible for using the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.***
- ***The system may not operate properly if the front smart camera is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.***
- ***Alert from driver attention assist should be taken very seriously since a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition. Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and rest.***
- ***Unsteady driver warning is not intended to extend the duration of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals to help remain alert.***
- ***In certain cases, fatigue may not affect the driver's behavior. In situations of this type, no warning will be provided. Therefore, it is important to take breaks at regular intervals, regardless of whether or not unsteady driver warning has given a warning.***

4.8.1.2 Unsteady Driver Warning

Unsteady driver warning is intended to alert the driver if his/her driving becomes erratic due to e.g., distraction or fatigue.

Unsteady driver warning is designed to help detect a slowly changing driving pattern. It is primarily intended to be used on main roads and is not meant for use in city traffic.

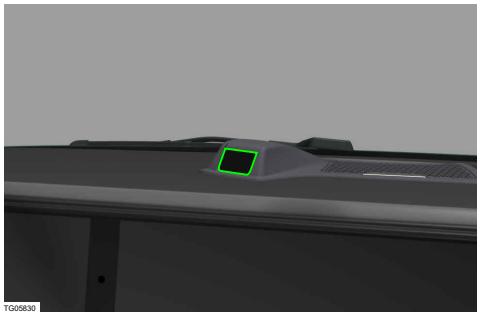
The function activates initially when the vehicle's speed first exceeds 70 km/h and remains active as long the speed remains above 65 km/h.

A system continuously monitors the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and steering wheel position to alert in the event of unsteady driving.

If the driving pattern becomes noticeably erratic, the driver will be alerted by an acoustic alert and visual warning on the driver's screen.

The warning will be repeated if the driving pattern does not change.

4.8.1.3 Driver Monitoring System



- Driver infrared camera

The driver infrared camera with eye tracking capability monitors the driver's face for eye and head movements.

The driver monitoring system has the following functions:

1. Attention detection

2. Drowsiness detection

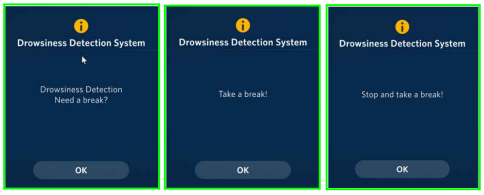
Attention detection:

The system can detect the distraction of the driver by measuring the gaze direction. If it is detected that the driver's attention is not on the road, the driver is alerted by means of visual and audible warnings.

The attention detection function is available for speeds above 20 km/h.

Drowsiness detection:

The system can detect the drowsiness of the driver based on the change in visual appearance over time. If slight drowsiness is detected, an audible warning is provided, and a rest recommendation pops up on the driver's screen. The alerts take place by means of visual and audible warnings if an increased level of drowsiness is detected. If the driver is detected to be very drowsy or sleeping, continuous visual and audible warnings are issued until the driver takes a stop for a rest. A corresponding pop-up message will appear on the driver's screen.



TG06769

The drowsiness detection system is always available but produces a warning for speeds above 10 km/h.

4.8.1.4 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Driver attention assist is unavailable (Icon is steady)
	Unsteady driver warning or driver monitoring is unavailable (Icon is steady)

4.8.1.5 Driver Attention Assist Settings

The settings for the driver attention assist can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Assist

For attention detection:

TG06701

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the attention detection.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the visual warning only.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate the visual warning and chime.

For drowsiness detection:

TG06702

- Tap on the button (1) to activate the visual warning only.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the visual warning and chime.

4.8.1.6 Limitations of Driver Attention Assist

The driver attention assist may not work in the following situations:

- Driver infrared camera is obstructed by body parts (hands or arms), objects, condensation, mist or contaminated by non-transparent dust, or dirt.
- If the driver's face is covered with clothing, hair fringe, a large hat or a face mask.
- If the driver is wearing infrared-blocking eyeglasses.

4.8.2 Lane Safety Assist (if equipped)

4.8.2.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The lane safety assist system can stop functioning unexpectedly. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.***
- ***There is a risk of an accident if the lane safety assist unexpectedly intervenes due to malfunction in lane detection. It is the driver's responsibility to steer according to traffic conditions.***

4.8.2.2 Description

4.8.2.2.1 Overview

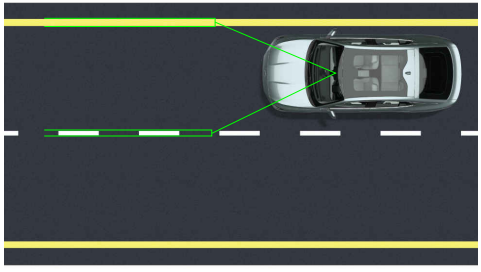
The lane safety assist (LSA) functions are designed to help reduce the risk of accidents in situations where the vehicle unintentionally leaves its lane on highways or other major roads.

The system functions in the speed range of approximately 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

The lane safety assist functions with the help of following features:

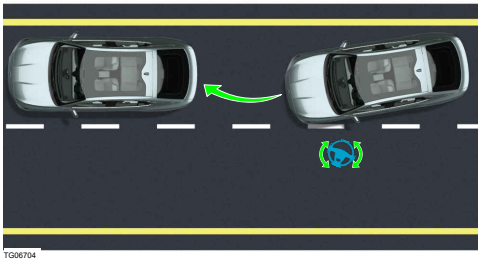
- Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)
- Blind Side Collision Avoidance (BSCA)
- Evasive Steering Support (ESS)

4.8.2.2.2 Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)



TG05900

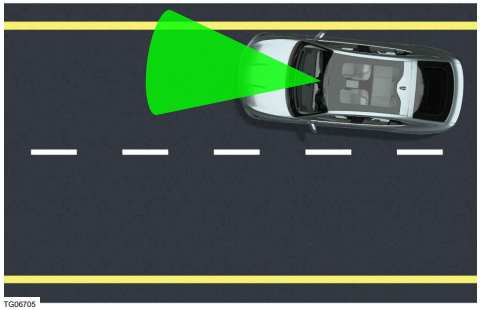
The emergency lane keeping system uses a front smart camera to monitor the edges of the road and the lane marker lines. If the vehicle is about to cross the edge of the road or a lane marker line, the system attempts to actively steer the vehicle back onto the road. A visual warning will be illuminated on the driver's screen during this intervention. If the steering attempt is insufficient, the system will warn the driver to take over steering control.



TG06704

When the driver's hand is not on the steering wheel and the emergency lane keeping system performs two or more consecutive interventions within a rolling interval of 3 minutes, the system will provide an acoustic warning. A corresponding warning pop-up message will appear on the driver's screen.

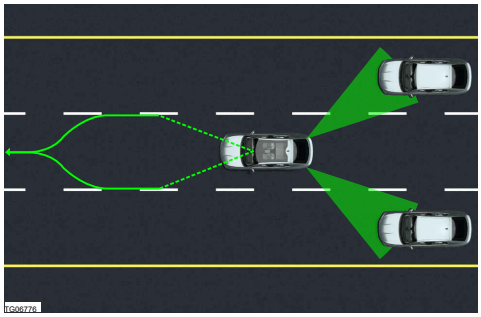
4.8.2.2.3 Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



TG06705

If the vehicle approaches a detected lane marker and is likely to leave the lane, the lane departure warning system provides an acoustic and visual warning. The warning will be disabled if the driver uses the turn indicator or steers to change lanes. This indicates the driver intends to change lanes for overtaking.

4.8.2.2.4 Blind Side Collision Avoidance (BSCA) (if equipped)



When a target is detected in the blind spot area and the main vehicle begins to change lanes towards that side, whether intentionally with a turn signal or unintentionally without turn signal, the steering system will return the vehicle to its original lane before it crosses into the adjacent lane. The feature utilizes information from the rear radars and the front smart camera to initiate corrective action on the vehicle's steering system. This occurs in the event of a risk of collision with a vehicle detected in a blind spot area. The corrective action is triggered whether or not the direction indicator has been activated.

INFORMATION

Control of the vehicle can be retaken at any time by operating the steering wheel.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Blind side collision avoidance error
	Blind side collision avoidance right side
	Blind side collision avoidance left side

The system is temporarily unavailable when:

- Driving vehicle on a lane side marker line.
- Activating the hazard warning lights.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h and more than 180 km/h.
- The lane width changes.
- Electronic Stability Control is active.

The system cannot be activated when:

- The front smart camera does not detect a lane side marker line on road.
- If the rear corner radars are blocked due to sticking of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) or installing unapproved fitments on the bumper.

4.8.2.2.5 Evasive Steering Support (ESS) (if equipped)

The evasive steering support function helps prevent collisions with vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, or larger animals in front of the vehicle within the same lane. When a collision risk is detected, the evasive steering support function warns the driver and aids their steering if they turn the steering wheel. When the steering wheel is turned, the system provides additional steering torque to assist driver steer around the potential collusion target ahead. After passing the target, the system delivers steering effort again in the opposite direction to assist the driver to return the vehicle to initial trajectory. After vehicle trajectory is corrected upon completion of successful evasive and steering back maneuvers, the system will deactivate itself.

The Evasive Steering Assist system aids you in steering around a possible collusion target ahead of you that you are quickly approaching.

The system can be activated under the following conditions:

- When the Forward Collision Assist System detects an imminent and evadable collision towards object ahead.
- When the steering wheel is turned towards evasion direction during the evasive steering system is ready.

The system cannot be activated or aborted under the following conditions:

- A relevant error occurs
- A clear driver reaction is detected by brake pedal press
- A clear driver reaction is detected by steering wheel turn against the evasive steering support (ESS)
- The host vehicle is in accessory mode
- The target path for the intended evasion is blocked or otherwise infeasible

The system is temporarily unavailable under the following conditions:

- A relevant error occurs
- A clear driver reaction is detected by brake pedal press
- The host vehicle turns with a high yaw rate, high curvature, or high lateral acceleration
- The host vehicle is in accessory mode
- The host vehicle is not driving forward
- The host vehicle gear is in reverse
- The function is deactivated via HMI
- Full Brake has been active in the last 10 seconds
- A clear lack of driver reaction is detected by not strong enough steering wheel operation
- A clear driver reaction is detected by overtaking oncoming objects
- The target path for the intended evasion is blocked or otherwise infeasible

4.8.2.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is deactivated. Icon flashes when there is an emergency lane keeping intervention or lane departure warning.
	Icon illuminates when the lane safety assist is activated but conditions for emergency lane keeping steering intervention and lane departure warning are not fulfilled (e.g. vehicle speed is less than 60 kph). This states that lane safety assist is in passive state.
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is standby state in which lane safety assist is activated and is ready to be in action but no dangerous situation is detected.
	Icon illuminates when emergency lane keeping is deactivated and lane departure warning is in passive state.
	Icon illuminates when emergency lane keeping is deactivated and lane departure warning is in standby state.
	Icon illuminates when lane safety assist is in failure state.
	Level 1: Warning take steering wheel control
	Level 2: Warning take steering wheel control The system will be deactivated very soon.

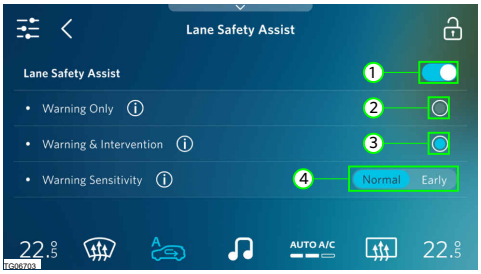
4.8.2.4 Lane Safety Assist Settings

It is possible to select between warning only or warning and steering intervention. The warning sensitivity of the function can also be adjusted.

Different settings for lane safety assist can be changed using the control display when the function is active.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Lane Safety Assist



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the lane safety assist.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the warning only.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate the warning and intervention.
- Tap on the button (4) to set the desired warning sensitivity.s

4.8.2.5 Unavailability Conditions of Lane Safety Assist System

The lane safety assist system is not active when

- One or more of the vehicle doors is open.

- Any ABS/ESC, TCS, or RCS functions are unavailable.
- One of the ABS/ESC, TCS, and RCS functions is in control.
- Hazards lights are activated.
- The vehicle is not being driven in the forward direction.
- The vehicle experiences large lateral and longitudinal acceleration.
- The system cannot detect proper lane markings on a certain side.

INFORMATION

The lane safety assist system is active for lane markings with the following properties:

- ***Having White, Yellow, Blue, and Green colors***
- ***With both continuous or dashed types***
- ***Which do not have unsteady characteristics***
- ***Which are not too sharp***
- ***With proper lane widths if both sides of the lane markings are detected.***

4.8.2.6 Limitations of Lane Safety Assist

The lane safety assist may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- During high winds
- Under uneven road surfaces
- On a snowy or icy road
- In a construction zone
- Heavy or uneven loads
- Incorrect tire pressure
- When an improper tire is installed on the vehicle such as
  - A spare tire
  - Tire with snow chain is used
  - Excessively worn or low pressure tire
- Front smart camera blocked with stickers or objects.
- The lane markings are worn away, dark or covered up by dirt or snow.
- During towing
- On the road that diverges, merges etc.
- In an area where the brightness of the scene that the camera detects changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of the tunnels.

Under these conditions, the driver should deactivate the lane safety assist function.

4.8.3 Forward Collision Avoidance (if equipped)

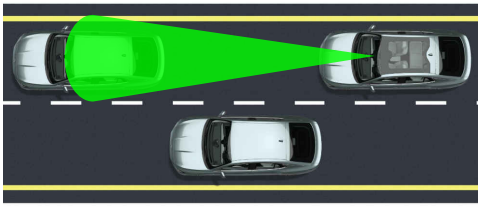
4.8.3.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Never solely rely on a forward collision alert to warn you of a potential collision, this can result in serious injury or death. Always keep your eyes on the road when driving, forward collision alert is for guidance purposes only and is not a substitute for attentive driving.***
- ***Several factors can reduce or impair the performance, causing either unnecessary, invalid, inaccurate, or missed warnings.***
- ***It is the driver's responsibility to take immediate corrective action against forward collision alert as forward collision alert does not slow down the vehicle or apply brakes in every situation due to system limits.***
- ***The advanced emergency braking function shall suppress or abort braking if the driver presses the accelerator pedal strongly or moves the steering wheel significantly.***
- ***Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.***
- ***Do not solely rely on the advanced emergency brake system to brake the vehicle. The driver is always responsible to monitor current traffic situations and brake the vehicle at the correct time.***

4.8.3.2 Description

4.8.3.2.1 Overview



TG06708

Forward collision assist system helps the driver to avoid the collision by issuing a warning and if required braking the vehicle to a complete stop.

The front smart camera and the radar sensor monitor the area in front of the vehicle for the presence of a licensable vehicle and vulnerable road user such as pedestrian and bicycle.

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.

1. Warning
2. Braking Support
3. Advanced Emergency Braking (AEB)

When the object is detected in the vehicle's driving range acoustic warning with a flashing icon is displayed on the driver's screen to warn the driver. Warnings cancel automatically when the risk of a collision has been reduced.

If there is an impending collision and the brakes are not being applied enough, the braking force may be increased, depending on the situation.

If the driver does not react to the warning, the system may apply the brakes with strong braking force within the limits of the system in order to reduce the speed of impact in the event of a collision.

The warning sensitivity can be adjusted to three levels using the control display.

Forward collision assist has the following two functions,

- Distance Alert
- Forward Collision Avoidance

4.8.3.2.2 Distance Alert

The distance warning function warns the driver if the time interval to the vehicle ahead becomes too short. A warning symbol will be shown on the driver's screen.

Distance warning is active at vehicle speeds above 30 km/h and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the car, in the same direction and at low relative speed.

INFORMATION

If the Adaptive Driver Assist or Adaptive Cruise Control is active, distance alert is not triggered.

4.8.3.2.3 Forward Collision Avoidance (FCA)

The forward collision avoidance has the following three functions:

1. Pedestrian Detection
2. Forward Collision Alert
3. Advanced Emergency Braking

Pedestrian Detection

The pedestrian detection system enables the vehicle to detect pedestrians or bicyclists crossing the road. The function works with the help of a front smart camera and monitors if your vehicle is approaching a pedestrian or bicyclist. If a collision is imminent and the driver does not react in due time, an acoustic and visual alert is triggered.

Forward Collision Alert

Forward collision alert detects and warns the driver of approaching hazards when driving the vehicle. The system detects vehicles and vulnerable road users such as bicycles, and pedestrians travelling in the same direction as yours and provides an acoustic, visual alert and haptic warning to help avoid a collision.

Advanced Emergency Braking (AEB)

Advanced emergency braking can warn the driver about an impending forward collision and brake the vehicle strongly, if necessary.

The front camera and the radar sensor monitor the area in front of the vehicle for the presence of a licensable vehicle and vulnerable road users, such as pedestrian and bicycle.

Forward collision avoidance has the following modes:

Off mode: Forward collision assist is Off. The system will not provide warning or braking intervention.

On mode: Forward collision assist is On. The system will provide audible and visual warning to the driver with braking intervention.

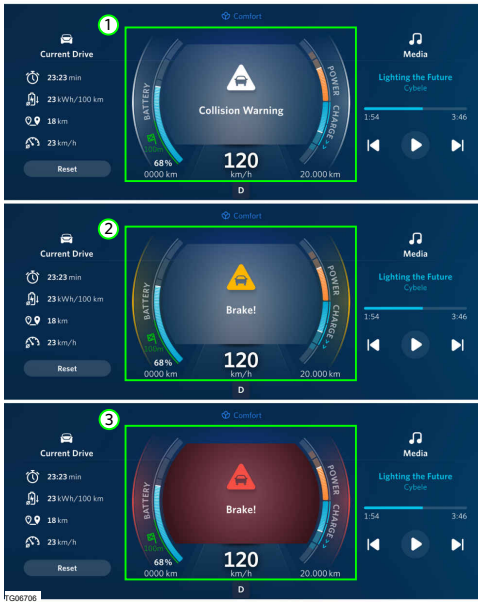
Forward collision avoidance operational limits

Conditions	Forward collision avoidance mode	
	Warning only	Warning with auto braking
For stationary vehicle	5 - 180 km/h	5 - 180 km/h
For moving or braking vehicle	5 - 180 km/h	5 - 180 km/h
For crossing or stationary pedestrians, cyclists and motorbikes	5 - 85 km/h	5 - 85 km/h

4.8.3.2.4 Display icon

Icon	Description
	Collision avoidance manually deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Advanced emergency braking alert (Icon is flashing with warning sound)

Forward collision avoidance display on the driver's screen



1. Collision warning
2. Partial braking
3. Emergency braking

4.8.3.3 Forward Collision Avoidance Settings

The settings of forward collision assist function can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Preventive Systems

- Tap on the button (1) to set the desired warning sensitivity.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the distance warning.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the collision avoidance.

4.8.3.4 Limitations of Forward Collision Avoidance

The forward collision avoidance may not work in the following situations:

- The system detects a malfunction in itself or in related systems, such as the brakes (ABS, ESC), steering, etc.
- When the ESC or other safety related system is off.
- If the front smart camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or sticking of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass.
- If the radar is blocked due to sticking of foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) or installing unapproved fitments on the bumper.
- When driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog.
- When driving on ice or icing conditions.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front.
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with unusually shaped luggage, and trailer.

4.8.4 Rear Corner Radar Features (if equipped)

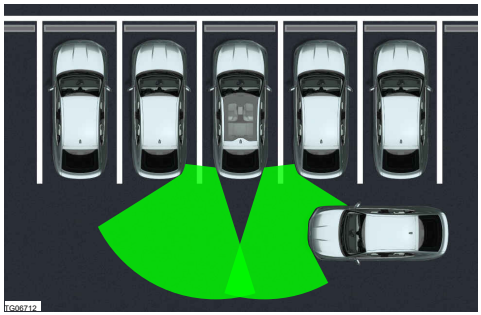
4.8.4.1 Description

The vehicle is installed with two rear corner short-range radars and these radars provide the following vehicle level functions:

1. Rear cross traffic alert
2. Blind spot warning
3. Occupant safe exit

4. Rear collision warning

4.8.4.2 Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Brake



The rear cross traffic alert system can help alert the driver of an approaching vehicle or objects behind the vehicle while the vehicle is reversing, for example, pulling out of a parking space.

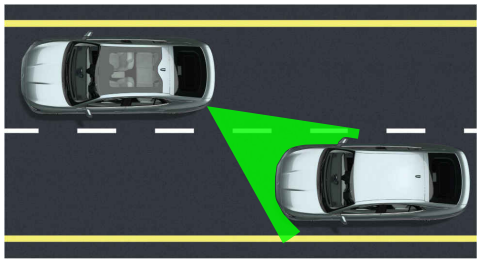
The system uses the short-range radar installed on both sides of the rear bumper to detect an approaching vehicle from the rear. If an imminent collision is detected, an acoustic warning will sound with a warning indication on the driver's screen to alert the driver. If the driver does not react in time to the warning the system actively applies the brake to mitigate the collision only if the "Warning With Brake" option is selected.

The rear cross traffic alert operates up to speed 9 km/h.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Cross traffic alert/Brake left (Icon is steady)
	Cross traffic alert/Brake right (Icon is steady)
	Cross traffic brake (Icon is steady)

4.8.4.3 Blind Spot Warning



⚠ WARNING

- ***The blind spot warning is a supplementary function to assist the driver while driving. Do not completely rely on the function, as it cannot always judge if it is safe to change lanes. There is a risk of an accident resulting in death or serious injury.***
- ***For the first drive after vehicle delivery, the radars will take some time to self-calibrate for the proper functioning of the system. The calibration process may take up to 30 minutes. During calibration, some radar functions may not work properly and below telltale appear on the cluster screen. The calibration process does not impact safe driving as the driver is still responsible for vehicle control.***

Icon	Description
	Corner radar error telltale (Icon is steady)

INFORMATION

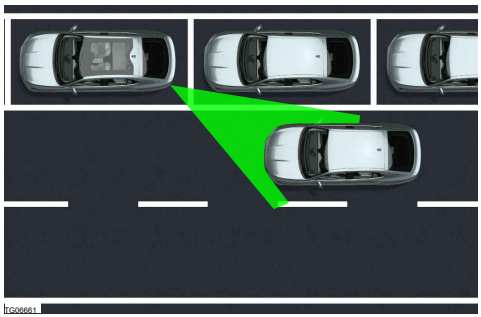
The blind spot warning function will not be available during the calibration process of the radar.

The blind spot warning monitors the blind spot and traffic in the adjacent lanes behind the vehicle.

Two radar sensors in the rear bumper detect fast approaching vehicles on adjacent lanes and a warning symbol in the outside mirror and on the driver's screen is activated. And if adjacent lanes are occupied within the limits of the blind spot zone, even if there is no change in relative speed, the warning symbol will continue to flash until the blind spot zone is cleared.

When the driver uses the turn indicator to change lanes the warning symbol flashes in the corresponding outside mirror indicating that there is a risk of collision if the system detects a possible collision.

4.8.4.4 Occupant Safe Exit



WARNING

- ***Always pay attention to traffic and area around your vehicle.***
- ***The occupant safe exit system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.***
- ***The alert may not occur in time if traffic/object is approaching very quickly.***

The occupant safe exit system can detect object approaching from behind such as unseen vehicle or a bicycle and warn the driver if a door is opened. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

The warning will be provided as below:

1. If the vehicle is stationary and any approaching object is detected.
    - A warning light will lit in the corresponding outside mirror and on the driver's screen.
2. If the door is opened and any approaching object is detected.
    - A warning light will lit in the corresponding outside mirror and on the driver's screen with an acoustic warning.

The occupant safe exit function will be available for 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned Off.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Level 1: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected (Icon is steady)
	Level 2: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected and any door is opened (Icon is flashing)
	Level 1: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected. (Icon is steady)
	Level 2: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected and any door is opened (Icon is flashing)

4.8.4.5 Rear Collision Warning

The rear collision warning function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind. A radar sensor in the rear bumper scans the traffic behind the vehicle to detect an impending rear end collision. When a hazardous situation is detected, the system warns the driver of the vehicle behind by means of hazard warning lights flashing at a high frequency.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Rear collision warning (Icon is flashing)

4.8.4.6 Activating/Deactivating Corner Radar Features

The corner radar features can be activated/ deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Preventive Systems → Cross traffic alert with brake

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the occupant safe exit.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the rear cross traffic alert.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate warning only for the rear cross traffic alert.
- Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate warning with brake for the rear cross traffic alert.
- Tap on the button (5) to activate/deactivate the rear collision warning.
- Tap on the button (6) to activate/deactivate the blind spot warning.

4.8.4.7 Limitations

In the following situations, cross traffic alert may not work properly.

- If the front end or side of an approaching target is small (e.g. Sports vehicle).
- When there is an object between your vehicle and an approaching vehicle.
- When driving on a road with a grade that changes sharply (sharp incline/decline).
- If the shape of an approaching vehicle is unusual (tractors, motorcycles with sidecars, etc.).

4.8.5 Adaptive Driver Assist (if equipped)

4.8.5.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***The adaptive driver assistance function is an aid only to assist the driver while driving the vehicle. Do not rely on the function in all situations, it cannot drive the vehicle autonomously. It is the driver's responsibility to control the vehicle at all times.***
- ***Due to system limitations, the function may not be able to provide independent and appropriate support in all traffic conditions. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle according to the current traffic conditions. Otherwise, there may be a risk of an accident.***

4.8.5.2 Description

4.8.5.2.1 Overview

Adaptive driver assistance (ADA) works with the help of front smart camera and front radar. The system maintains your vehicle's position in the lane you are traveling in and the distance between it and the target vehicle ahead. It helps to increase driver comfort with continuous control support to keep your vehicle in the middle of the lane without exceeding the distance and/or speed set by the driver relative to the vehicle in front.

Operating requirements

To use the adaptive driver assistance following conditions must be satisfied:

- The adaptive driver assistance function is active.
- The intelligent adaptive cruise control is active and in control.
- Your vehicle is in a driving path with proper lane markings or road boundaries.

4.8.5.2.2 Adaptive Driver Assist (ADA)

The adaptive driver assistance supports the driver at speeds up to 160 km/h to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane, in addition to the intelligent adaptive cruise control assistant with stop-and-go feature.

The system can support the driver in case of missing lanes by the following vehicle ahead up to 60 km/h.

4.8.5.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is active, and longitudinal control is in an override state. (Icon is slow flashing)

Icon	Description
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is at the system boundary and the longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is fast flashing)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in standby state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in a failure state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal controls is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal control is in a passive state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an error state. (Icon is steady)

4.8.5.4 Using Adaptive Driver Assist

Adaptive driver assistance can be activated using the driver's screen function selection menu.

- Select the "Adaptive Driver Assistance" on the driver's screen using right the steering wheel switch. (6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen)

Changing adaptive driver assistance settings

The adaptive driver assistance feature settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Adaptive Driver Assistance

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent mode.
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.
- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

4.8.5.5 Limitations of Adaptive Driver Assist

Adaptive driver assistance may not function properly in following conditions:

- The lane markings are not visible or the vehicle is on a sharp bend.
- If the vehicle is not in the drivable path.
- Driving path is too narrow or too wide.
- In case of sudden lateral or linear movements of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The above list does not include all limitations for the adaptive driver assistance. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle according to the current traffic conditions and in all situations.

4.8.6 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped)

4.8.6.1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control maintains an appropriate headway with respect to any licensable vehicle in dense traffic situations on highways and secondary roads and in cities.

When adaptive cruise control detects a vehicle ahead, it can brake or accelerate the vehicle within system limits. When approaching the target vehicle, it automatically brakes to match its speed and then maintains the set distance as much as possible. On open roads without traffic, it operates like a cruise

control system. In other words, when no vehicle ahead is detected, the system will accelerate or decelerate to maintain the set speed until it reaches the set speed value.

Adaptive cruise control set speed range is 20 km/h to 170 km/h. The system will automatically maintain a selected speed and distance.

4.8.6.2 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control (iACC)

Intelligent adaptive cruise control (iACC) includes the features of adaptive cruise control with stop-and-go and adds speed sign recognition, which can automatically adjust the set speed of the vehicle to the detected speed limit. The function assists the driver in controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle driving ahead.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control can automatically or manually take over detected speed limits between 20 km/h and 140 km/h as the set speed.

⚠ WARNING

Driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in safe manner and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations. The function is supplementary to driver assistance system intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer. It cannot handle all situations in various traffic, weather, and road conditions.

INFORMATION

The speed of the vehicle can be increased or decreased at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

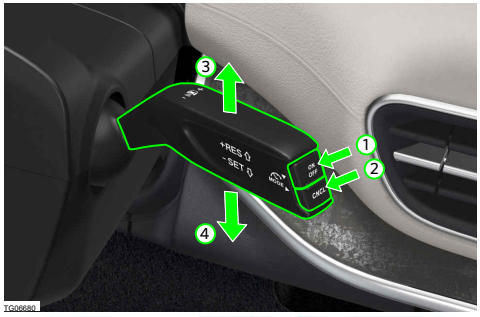
- ***The detection area ahead can be limited, for example, by rain, snow, heavy spray, or light shining into the camera.***
- ***The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turning lanes, exit ramps, construction zones, rises or dips that obstruct visibility, intersections, toll stations or city traffic.***
- ***Resting your foot on accelerator pedal may override the adaptive cruise control and system may not apply brake automatically in this situation.***
- ***Driver is always responsible to check the adaptive cruise control indicator on the driver's screen to determine which mode the system is in before using the feature. If iACC is not active, the vehicle will not automatically reduce speed after detecting preceding vehicle. There is a risk of an accident and serious injury.***
- ***Always observe the traffic condition and surrounding while changing the drive mode when the adaptive cruise control is active. When the drive mode is changed, the vehicle acceleration characteristic also changes.***

4.8.6.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Detected speed limit is displayed in the circle on driver's screen (Icon is steady)
	Accept or reject the recommended speed limit (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control is active (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control override (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control passive (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control failure (Icon is steady)

4.8.6.4 Using Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

4.8.6.4.1 Overview



1. Adaptive Cruise Control On/Off
2. Cancel adaptive cruise control

3. Resume adaptive cruise control/Increase set speed/Accept set speed/Confirm drive-off
4. Set adaptive cruise control speed/Decrease set speed/Reject set speed

4.8.6.4.2 Switching adaptive cruise control On/Off

1. Select the "Adaptive Cruise Control" on the driver's screen, using right steering wheel switch. (6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen)
2. Press button to turn On/Off the adaptive cruise control.

4.8.6.4.3 Activating adaptive cruise control

1. If required, activate the intelligent mode (Intelligent adaptive cruise control). (4.8.6.4.10 Activating intelligent adaptive cruise control and Overtake Prevention)
2. Press the right stalk down to set the adaptive cruise control speed.

The set speed is displayed on the driver's screen in green and is maintained automatically.

To activate the adaptive cruise control when the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and activate the adaptive cruise control. When the function is active, release the brake pedal and allow the vehicle to drive off. In this case, the set speed will be 20 km/h.

INFORMATION

The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:

- ***Cruise control***
- ***Adaptive driver assistance***
- ***Speed Limiter***
- ***Adaptive cruise control***

If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

4.8.6.4.4 Changing adaptive cruise control speed

To increase or decrease the adaptive cruise control speed,

- Long press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed in 10 km/h increments.
- Short press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed in 1 km/h increments.

The new set speed is displayed on the driver's screen.

⚠ WARNING

When the right stalk is long pressed up, the vehicle may accelerate quickly. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. Always observe posted speed limits and current traffic regulations.

4.8.6.4.5 Resuming set speed

If adaptive cruise control is set at the desired speed and then the brakes are applied or button (1) is pressed, the cruise control is deactivated without erasing the set speed from memory.

- Press the right stalk up (2) to resume the system with set speed on memory.

4.8.6.4.6 Cancelling adaptive cruise control

- To cancel the adaptive cruise control, press the button (1) or press the brake pedal (2).

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the set speed will be stored and displayed on the driver's screen as a set speed on memory.

⚠ WARNING

The resume function should only be used if traffic and road conditions allow. Resuming a set speed that is too high or too low for prevailing traffic and road conditions could cause the vehicle to accelerate or decelerate too sharply for safe operation. There is a risk of collision and death or serious personal injury. Always observe current traffic conditions.

INFORMATION

If the vehicle or the system is turned Off or restarted, the stored set speed will be erased.

4.8.6.4.7 Stop-and-Go function

When the target vehicle in front comes to a complete stop, the system will brake your vehicle to a complete stop, maintaining the set headway setting.

Automatic drive-off

If the target vehicle starts moving within 5 seconds, the system will drive-off your vehicle automatically.

Manual drive-off

If the vehicle stays at a standstill for more than 5 seconds, automatic drive-off is inhibited. The system will display a warning on the driver's screen when drive-off is possible.

- Tip the accelerator pedal or press the right stalk up to manually drive-off the vehicle.

4.8.6.4.8 Overtake support

⚠ WARNING

The driver is always responsible to monitor the vehicle. The system may activate while changing lanes or exiting the motorways and increase the vehicle speed. There is a risk of an accident.

When following a target vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the turn indicator, the ACC system helps the driver by decreasing the gap distance.

The function supports the driver by accelerating rapidly to the set speed until the vehicle is completely overtaken.

4.8.6.4.9 Overtake Prevention

The Overtake Prevention system designed to improve safety by inhibiting overtaking actions in potentially dangerous scenarios. The system specifically restricts the driver from overtaking vehicles in the left lane, which serves as the faster lane in Turkey and numerous European nations.

⚠ WARNING

The Overtake Prevention and Overtake Support systems may require additional time to activate, depending on current traffic conditions.

4.8.6.4.10 Activating intelligent adaptive cruise control and Overtake Prevention

The function can be activated when the following condition is satisfied,

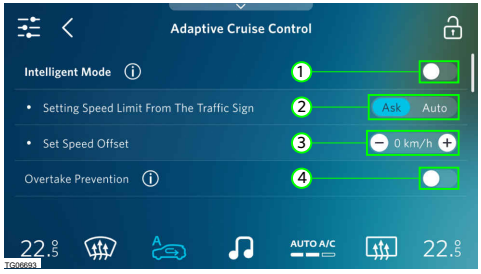
- Adaptive cruise control is activated.

INFORMATION

When the intelligent adaptive cruise control is activated, the system will automatically activate the traffic sign recognition function if already deactivated.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Adaptive Cruise Control



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent mode (Intelligent adaptive cruise control).
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

  Auto: Detected speed limit is automatically adopted as ACC set speed.

  Ask: Detected speed limit is proposed to the driver on the driver's screen. Driver can accept/decline the proposed speed by moving the right stalk up/down.
- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.
- Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate the overtake prevention.

4.8.6.4.11 Overriding adaptive cruise control

When the accelerator pedal is depressed and driver requested torque is more than that of the system, the adaptive cruise control icon starts to blink. In this case, the vehicle speed would increase above the set speed or the distance to the relevant target would start to decrease. As the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will slow down to the set speed or the headway setting.

Adaptive cruise control is automatically deactivated if the driver overrides the system for more than 60 seconds.

Overriding the system will not change the set speed. The driver should be careful when overriding the system since vehicle speed and headway are not monitored by the system in this state.

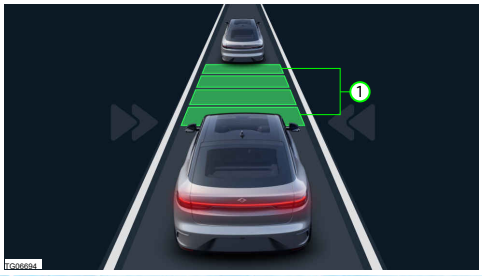
⚠ ATTENTION

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal may override adaptive cruise control. In case of override, automatic braking will not be applied, and the system will not maintain the distance to the vehicle in front.

4.8.6.4.12 Switching between cruise control and intelligent adaptive cruise control

- Select the "Adaptive Cruise Control" or "Cruise Control" on the driver's screen using right steering wheel switch. (6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen)

4.8.6.4.13 Adjusting the headway setting



1. Headway setting levels

The headway setting can be adjusted using the right stalk in 4 different levels. The set headway is displayed on the driver's screen (1).

TG06687

When the adaptive cruise control is On,

- Push the right stalk forward to increase the headway setting.
- Pull the right stalk backward (towards you) to decrease the headway setting.

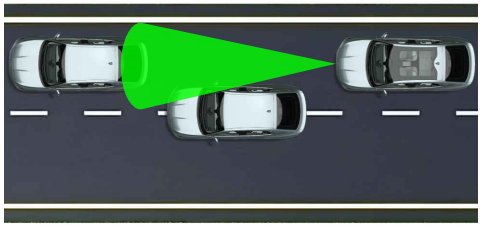
The vehicle will then maintain the set distance until,

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of your lane or view of the front radar.
- The headway setting is changed.

4.8.6.5 Limitations of Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

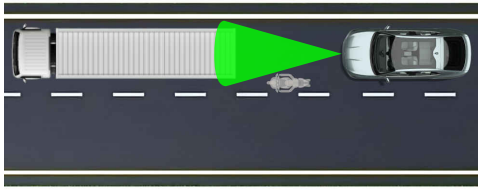
The front smart camera and radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow, ice, fog, loose gravel or spray. Vehicles in front will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all. Reflective objects such as ice, heavy rain, crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the functionality of the radar sensor.

- Adaptive cruise control's speed control performance may be reduced on high gradient roads.
- Vehicle cutting lane will not be detected unless it is completely in the same lane.



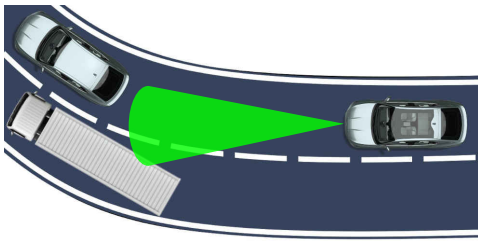
TG06688

- Vehicle such as motorcycle may be detected too late unless they are completely in front of your vehicle.



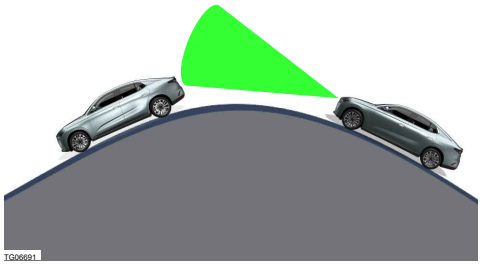
TG06689

- Target vehicle may be lost momentarily on curve roads and junctions and can be detected again suddenly. This may lead to rapid acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle. Adjust the set speed accordingly or cancel adaptive cruise control on curves and junctions.



TG06690

- Do not use the adaptive cruise control when driving on steep hills as adaptive cruise control may not detect a vehicle ahead or may detect suddenly.



- The system may not respond in the following cases:
  - Stopped vehicles entering the field of view of the sensors for the first time
  - Vehicle coming from the opposite lane
  - Special vehicles (trailers, narrow vehicles, etc.)
  - Animals
  - Pedestrians

INFORMATION

When the front smart camera or radar view is blocked, a warning is displayed on the driver's screen. The adaptive cruise control will enter a failure state. Remove the obstacles in front of the front smart camera and radar, and restart the adaptive cruise control.

4.8.7 Speed Limiter

4.8.7.1 Intelligent Speed Limiter (iSL)

Intelligent speed limiter function detects the speed limit from the traffic signs with the help of a front smart camera. Depending on the driver's set preference, the detected speed can be automatically set as the current speed limit of the vehicle or the system will ask for confirmation each time.

It is also possible to set the speed limit offset for detected speed using the control display. The system will allow the vehicle to reach the set speed offset. The driver can override the set speed limit by hardly pressing the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle speed is more than the set speed, the system will warn the driver by flashing the speed limiter icon on the driver's screen.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on intelligent speed limiter to determine the appropriate speed limit or driving speed. Always drive at a safe speed based on current traffic and road conditions.

INFORMATION

When the intelligent speed limiter is activated, the system will automatically activate the traffic sign recognition function if already deactivated.

4.8.7.2 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Speed limiter is in a standby state (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is in an error state (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active but overriden (Icon is flashing)
	Intelligent speed limiter standby (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter failure (Icon is steady)

4.8.7.3 Using Intelligent Speed Limiter

4.8.7.3.1 Overview

1. Intelligent speed limiter On/Off
2. Cancel intelligent speed limiter
3. Resume intelligent speed limiter/Increase set speed/Accept set speed
4. Set intelligent speed limiter speed/Decrease set speed/Reject set speed

4.8.7.3.2 Switching speed limiter On/Off

1. Select the "Speed Limiter" on the driver's screen using right the steering wheel switch.
2. Press the button to turn On/Off the speed limiter.

4.8.7.3.2 Changing speed limit

To increase or decrease the speed limit manually:

- Long press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed limit in 10 km/h increments.
- Short press the right stalk up or down, which changes the speed limit in 1 km/h increments.

The new set speed limit is displayed on the driver's screen.

4.8.7.3.4 Resuming speed limit

If the speed limit is set at the desired speed and then the button (1) is pressed, the intelligent speed limiter is deactivated without erasing the set speed limit from memory.

- Press the right stalk up (2) to resume the system with set speed limit on memory.

4.8.7.3.5 Cancelling intelligent speed limiter

- Press the button to cancel the intelligent speed limiter.

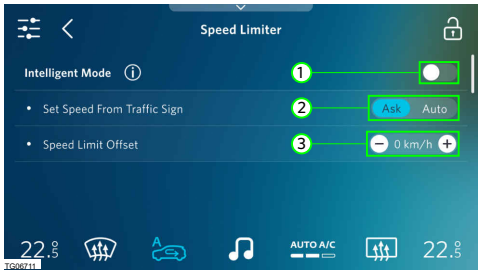
When the intelligent speed limiter is deactivated, the set speed limit will be stored and displayed on the driver's screen as a set speed limit on memory.

4.8.7.4 Speed Limiter Settings

Speed limiter settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu →Driver Assistance → Speed Limiter



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the intelligent speed limiter mode.
- Tap on the desired preference (2) to set speed limit from the traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

Auto: Detected speed limit is automatically adopted as current speed limit.

Ask: Detected speed limit is proposed to the driver on the driver's screen. Driver can accept/decline the proposed speed limit by moving the right stalk up/down.

- Press the "+" or "-" button (3) to increase or decrease the speed offset for detected traffic sign when the intelligent mode is active.

INFORMATION

The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:

- ***Cruise control***
- ***Adaptive driver assist***
- ***Speed Limiter***
- ***Adaptive cruise control***

If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

4.8.7.5 Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limiter

The intelligent speed limiter may not work in the following situations:

- If the speed limit signs are not clearly visible due to heavy rain, snow or fog.
- If the direct sunlight or bright light from oncoming traffic is interfering with the view of the camera.
- If the front smart camera view is blocked when the vehicle is driven very close to the vehicle in front.
- If the speed limit signs are concealed by objects.
- If the speed limits stored in the map database are incorrect or outdated.

The list above does not represent a complete list of situations that may interfere with the proper operation of intelligent speed limiter. It may fail to provide warnings for many other reasons.

4.8.8 Traffic Sign Assist

4.8.8.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the vehicle is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles and traffic participants, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulation.

The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and help make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather, and road conditions. The driver is always responsible for operating the vehicle safely.

4.8.8.2 Overview

The traffic sign assist (TSA) function assists the driver by displaying detected speed limits and traffic signs with a restriction indicated by an additional sign on the driver's screen. Traffic signs are evaluated using the front smart camera and the navigation system's map data.

The system detects the Speed Limit Sign, No Overtaking or Passing Sign and No Entry Sign. If the vehicle exceeds the perceived speed limit or performs prohibited action the system will alert the driver by flashing the applicable icon with an acoustic warning.

Within the limits of the system and depending on the country, implicit speed limit signs such as school zones, highways and residential areas are recognized, and the applicable speed limits are displayed.

In case of different speed limit information to be observed under different traffic conditions, an additional sign will be displayed below the speed limit.

INFORMATION

- ***The speed limit that is currently applicable is displayed on the driver's screen. If speed limit information on the road cannot be recognized, a '---' sign will be displayed in the speed limit display.***
- ***Navigation service is provided free of charge for 7 years with the vehicle and will be maintained for at least a total of 14 years after production.***

4.8.8.3 Display Icons

Icon	Description
	Traffic sign speed limit display (Icon is steady)
	Speed limit assist function is disabled (Icon is steady)
	Speed limit assist function failure (Icon is steady)

Example of traffic signs and their location on the driver's screen.

4.8.8.4 Activating/Deactivating Traffic Sign Assist

INFORMATION

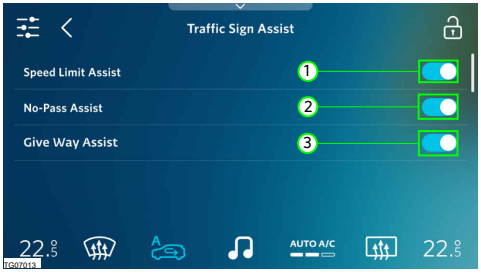
Follow the below steps to effectively use the traffic sign recognition feature:

1. ***Ensure that your profile is logged in.***
2. ***Make sure that the Go application is open.***

The traffic sign assist function settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Driver Assistance → Traffic Sign Assist



- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the speed limit assist.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate/deactivate the no-pass assist.
- If equipped:

  Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the give way assist.
- Tap on the button (4) to activate/deactivate the wrong way assist setting.

INFORMATION

The traffic sign assist function is automatically activated when the intelligent adaptive cruise control or intelligent speed limiter function is activated.

4.8.8.5 Limitations

The traffic sign assist is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

- When visibility is poor, such as in snow, rain, fog, or heavy spray.
- When there is glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun.

- If the camera's visual field is covered, for example by dirt or stickers.
- If the traffic signs are completely or partially covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs do not conform to the standard format.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If the traffic signs or the roadways have changed, and the navigation data is no longer up to date.
- If internet connection is not available.

4.9 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

The electric vehicles (EV) generate considerably less sound than the vehicles with combustion engines. It is hard for pedestrians to hear an approaching electric vehicle, which may increase the likelihood of a collision resulting in serious injury or even death. An artificial sound generator emits sound while driving below 30 km/h to warn surrounding traffic and pedestrians about the electric vehicle.

If the acoustic vehicle alerting system is not working, a warning indicator will be shown on the driver's screen. It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service and have the system corrected.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Acoustic vehicle alerting system error (Icon is steady)

⚠ WARNING

- ***The volume and audibility of the acoustic vehicle alerting system may be restricted by snow or heavy soiling in the area of the front grille. This could result in accidents.***
- ***Before each journey, always check the area of the front grill for heavy soiling and clean if necessary.***

4.10 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

4.10.1 General Information

The vehicle is equipped Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), which monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The system monitors the tire pressure and temperature by measuring the values received from the TPMS sensor fitted to the valve.

The fitted tires are detected by the system automatically. The current tire inflation pressure values are compared with the preset recommended values and are displayed on the control display.

When the low tire pressure warning illuminates, stop the vehicle and check tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Set the tire pressure using a tire pressure gauge.

⚠ WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is only an aid. It is the driver's responsibility to set the recommended tire pressure as per the tire pressure label and suitable for the operating situation.

4.10.2 Tire Pressure Display

The individual pressure and temperature status are displayed for the fitted tire. The tire with low pressure is highlighted in red color.

The current tire pressure information can be checked on the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Tires

1. Recommended tire pressure
2. Current tire temperature
3. Current tire pressure
4. Tire with low pressure
5. Low tire pressure indication
6. Settings

Current pressure and temperature values may vary depending on the vehicle operating conditions and outside temperature.

Recommended tire pressure is also displayed depending on the tire size and loading information entered. The recommended pressure is adjusted

immediately if the load status is changed in tire settings.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	The warning symbol is illuminated when low tire pressure is detected (Icon is steady)
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction (Icon is flashing)

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control when the vehicle is driven with under-inflated tires. Do not continue driving. When the low tire pressure indicator illuminates on the control display, check and inflate the tire pressure immediately.

4.10.3 TPMS Auto-Learning

Using the control display TPMS auto-learning can be completed.

INFORMATION

Auto-learning will be required if there is any change on TPMS or if there is a tire replacement.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Tires

Follow the below procedure for auto-learning:

Please ensure that the vehicle is in a stationary position for at least 17 minutes after any TPMS or tire change is conducted.

1. Tap on the auto-learning button when it appears on the control display.
2. Start to drive for approximately 10 minutes. Auto-learning takes place over 40 km/h. Until auto-learning is finished, you will see "--" instead of pressure and temperature values.

4.10.4 Tire Settings

After changing the wheel, fitted tires are detected by the system automatically. If the tires are not detected automatically by the TPMS, it is possible to update loading information using the control display.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Tires → Setting

2. Update the vehicle loading information.

5 High-voltage Battery & Charging

5.1 High-voltage Battery Safety

5.1.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of serious injury, burns, or electric shock from high-voltage components. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for high-voltage battery repair. Never attempt to remove or modify high-voltage components.***
- ***Never touch high-voltage components, there is a risk of serious injury. Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and all high-voltage components are energized when the ignition is switched Off.***
- ***If the vehicle or high-voltage battery is damaged, toxic gases or liquids may leak immediately or later. These released gases can also potentially cause fires.***
- ***If exposed to the gases escaping from the high-voltage battery immediately seek medical help as they can be toxic.***
- ***Never touch the fluids leaking from the high-voltage battery. It is recommended to contact Togg authorized service for assistance.***
- ***There is a risk of accident, injury or component damage if unauthorized work is carried out on the vehicle. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for any work on high-voltage components.***

⚠ ATTENTION

If the vehicle's underbody hits the ground, the high-voltage battery may get damaged. It is recommended that you first choose Togg authorized service for the inspection.

5.1.2 About High-voltage Battery

Your vehicle is powered by a lithium-ion battery pack. The high-voltage battery is controlled by a high-voltage battery management system (BMS). The high-voltage battery supplies high-voltage parts and 12V parts.

The high-voltage battery is located on the vehicle underbody and does not require any maintenance from the vehicle user.

The high-voltage battery undergoes discharge (Approx. 2% State of Charge in 30 days) even when the vehicle is not in use. The discharge rate may vary depending on the environmental conditions and vehicle configuration. In order for the high-voltage battery to achieve the maximum possible service life, it should always be sufficiently charged.

The high-voltage battery must never be allowed to discharge completely, as this situation causes damage to the high-voltage battery life. In the event of high-voltage battery complete discharge, it is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for further assistance.

5.1.3 High-voltage Battery Care

High-voltage batteries undergo physical and chemical aging and wear processes.This reduces the capacity of the high-voltage battery over its life cycle, depending on usage and environmental conditions. This reduces the maximum possible range and increases charging time, especially as the high-voltage battery ages.

The following measures can be taken to reduce high-voltage battery ageing and wear.

- Prevent high-voltage battery from complete discharge.

5.1.4 Disposing High-voltage Battery

It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for high-voltage battery disposal. Please dispose in accordance with local regulations.

5.2 Charging Equipment

5.2.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Only use the mains socket if it has been properly installed and inspected by a qualified electrician.***
- ***Never use a damaged charger cable, there is a risk of fatal electric shock. Always inspect the charging equipment before each use.***
- ***For safety reasons always keep children away from the vehicle being charged.***
- ***There is a risk of fire or short circuit if extension cables or multiple socket outlets are used together with a charging cable. Always connect the charger cable mains socket to mains plug directly.***
- ***Only use the Togg approved charging cable and equipment to charge the high-voltage battery. Always follow the local regulations and standards.***

- ***It is recommended to visit Togg authorized service if there is a malfunction in charging equipment. Never try to repair charging equipment yourself.***
- ***Always use a suitable charging station and charging cable. There is a risk of fire if incompatible equipment is used to charge the vehicle due to overheating.***

5.2.2 Charging Cable

Type 2 to type 2 (Mode 3)

This charging cable can be used to charge the high-voltage battery at a special AC charging station. This cable does not need the control box, as the charging station has the residual current device.

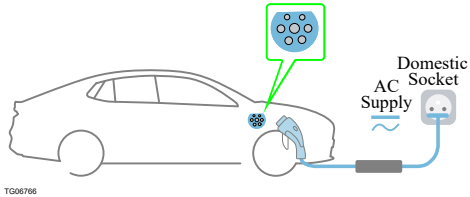
5.3 Charging Types

5.3.1 Overview

There are three types of charging.

1. Mode 2 charging
2. Mode 3 charging
3. DC Fast charging/Mode 4 charging

5.3.2 Mode 2

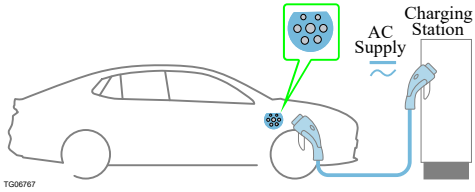


The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged using a domestic power outlet with a maximum 16 A current. If the CEE socket is available, then the high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged with a maximum 32 A current per phase. The electrical wiring and the socket must be tested and fault-free. The power supply at the domestic power outlet uses alternating current to charge the high-voltage battery.

A special charging cable with an IC-CPD is required to use this mode.

While charging with this mode without the CEE socket, longer charging times should be planned than for other charging modes.

5.3.3 Mode 3

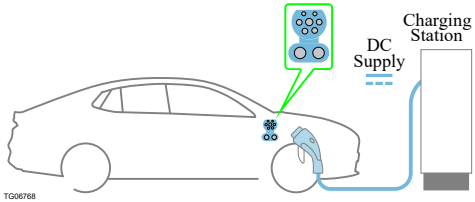


The high-voltage battery can be charged using a socket at a designated AC charging station with a maximum 32A current per phase. The power supply at a charging uses alternating current to charge the high-voltage battery. The charging cable might be permanently connected to the charging station. If the charging cable is not available at the charging station, use type 2 to type 2 charging cable provided with the vehicle.

To charge the vehicle at a mode 3 charging station, type 2 connector must be used at the vehicle side and charging station side.

The mode 3 charging type requires less charging time than charging at a domestic power outlet.

5.3.4 DC Fast Charging/Mode 4



The high-voltage battery can be charged at a special DC fast charging station. The DC fast charging uses a higher-rated power supply, which helps to reduce the charging time significantly as compared to other modes. Direct current is used to charge the high-voltage battery.

The charging cable is permanently connected to the charging station.

INFORMATION

The DC charging cable for the vehicle must not be longer than 30 m due to the legal requirements.

5.4 Charging Operation

5.4.1 Starting Charging Operation

To start the charging operation, below conditions must be satisfied:

- Drive position is in "P" (Park mode)
- Electric parking brake is activated

Follow the below steps to start the charging operation:

1. Unlock the vehicle and press on the edge of the charging lid to open it.

2. Open the dust cover if charging with DC fast charging.

Or

Connect the mode 2 charging plug to the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging plug to the connection point on the AC charging station.

INFORMATION

If charging at DC fast charging station, the cable at the charging station side is non-detachable.

3. Place the charging cable connector on the charging socket and press it until it is locked correctly.

⚠ ATTENTION

If charging your vehicle at a charging station follow the instruction mentioned at the charging station.

The charging process will start automatically once the charging cable is locked.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Charging cable plugged (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage battery level low (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system warning (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system fault (Icon is steady)

5.4.2 Charging Status Display

Charging status can be monitored on the light display equipped with the charging port.

LED	Light Status	Description
	Blinking	Charging
	Static	Fully charged
	Static	Scheduled charging
	Static	Error

The below screen appears when the charger is connected or charging is started on the driver's screen.

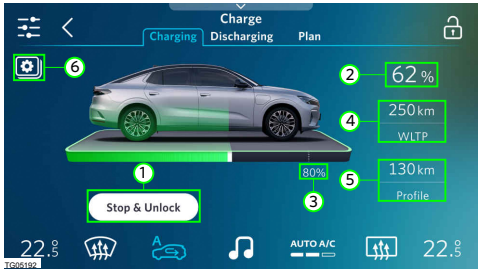
1. Charging in progress
2. Remaining time
3. Current high-voltage battery State of Charge (SoC)
4. WLTP driving range
5. V2L target State of Charge (SoC)

On control display

Charging status can also be checked on the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Menu → My Devices → Charge → Charging



1. Charging "Stop and Unlock"
2. Current high-voltage battery State of Charge (Soc)
3. Target high-voltage battery charge percentage
4. Maximum WLTP driving range
5. Profile specific driving range
6. Charge setting menu

5.4.3 Ending Charging Operation

The charging cable is automatically locked during the charging process.

Unlocking the charging cable during AC charging

- Unlock the vehicle
- Open the door

The AC charging will stop for a while in above conditions. If the charging plug is still inserted in charging port the charging will restart automatically.

Unlocking charging cable using the control display

The charging cable will be unlocked when the charging process is stopped using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Menu → My Devices → Charge → Charging

- Tap on the "Stop & Unlock" button, to unlock the charging plug.

Ending charging process

1. Unlock the charging plug and remove it from the charging socket.
2. Close the dust cover if removed.
3. Close the charging lid.
4. Disconnect the mode 2 charging plug from the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging plug from the connection point on the AC charging station.

INFORMATION

If charging at DC fast charging station, the cable at the charging station side is non-detachable. Store the cable properly at the designated place.

5.4.4 Charge Settings

Limit AC current

⚠ ATTENTION

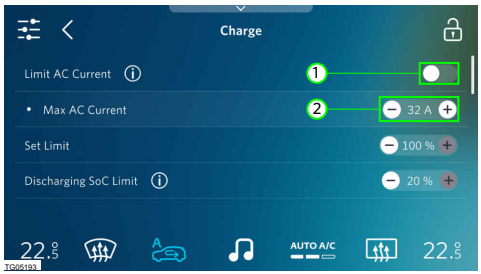
There is a risk of fire. If the charge current strength is set incorrectly, the electrical circuit can be overloaded and overheated.

The AC current can be limited when charging the vehicle at a domestic power outlet using the control display.

The set charge current strength has to be checked by a qualified electrician for the electrical circuit. If you are not sure about the approved current strength of the electrical circuit, set the current limit to the lowest level to avoid damage to electrical circuit.

Go to:

Control Display → Menu → My Devices → Charge → Charging → Setting



- Tap on button (1) to activate/deactivate the limit AC current function.
- Tap on the "+" or "-" button (2) to set the max AC current, when the limit AC current function is active.

  AC current limit can be set between 6 A and 32 A.

Charge limit

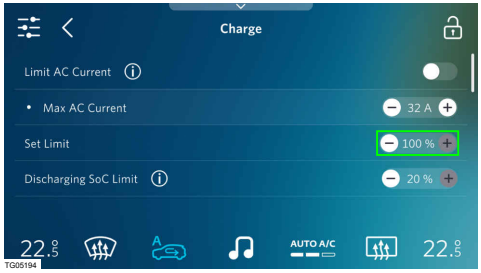
When charging at DC fast charging station, it is recommended to set the charging limit to reduce charging costs. For physical and chemical reasons, the charging speed decreases when the high-voltage battery state of charge approaches 100%.

It is recommended to set the charge limit at 80%.

The charge limit can be set using the control display between 40% to 100%.

Go to:

Control Display → Menu → My Devices → Charge → Charging → Setting



- Tap on the "+" or "-" button to increase or decrease the charge limit.

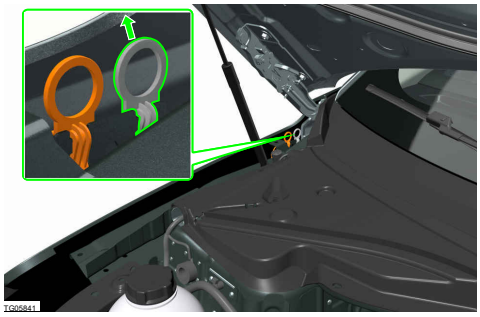
The charge limit percentage changes in 5% increments.

5.5 Troubleshooting

5.5.1 Manually Unlocking the Charging Cable

If the charging cable is not unlocked automatically after charging operation is ended it can be unlocked manually.

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the hood.
2. Locate the manual release mechanism white ring near the right side bonnet hinge.



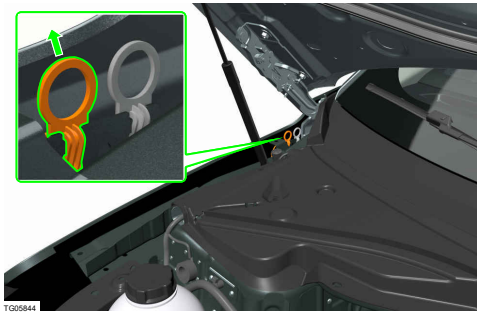
3. Pull the white ring and unlock the charge cable and reposition the ring to its original position.

Only unlock the charging cable manually when there is a malfunction in the mechanism. It is recommended that you immediately visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked.

5.5.2 Manually Unlocking Charging Lid

If the charging lid is not opening due to malfunction, it can be opened manually.

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the hood.
2. Locate the charing lid manual release orange ring near the right side bonnet hinge.



3. Pull the orange ring and unlock the charging lid and reposition the ring to its original position.

Only unlock the charging lid manually when there is a malfunction in the mechanism. It is recommended that you immediately visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked.

5.5.3 Malfunction in Charging Operation

When charging status light is red LED, it indicates there is a malfunction in the charging operation.
(5.4.2 Charging Status Display)

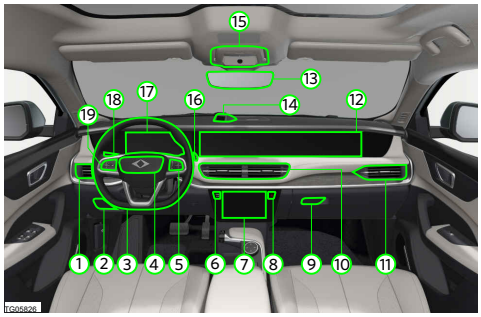
Follow the below procedure:

1. Unlock the charging plug.
2. Restart the charging operation. (5.4.1 Starting Charging Operation)

If the malfunction is not resolved, It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for further assistance.

6 Display & Features

6.1 Dashboard Overview



1. Left air vent
2. Fuse box cover
3. Steering wheel
4. Horn pad
5. Steering wheel switch right
6. Start/Stop switch
7. Control display
8. Hazard switch
9. Glove box latch
10. Center air vent
11. Right air vent
12. Main screen
13. Inside rear view mirror
14. Driver infrared camera
15. Overhead console
16. Right stalk
17. Driver's screen
18. Left stalk
19. Steering wheel switch left

6.2 Driver's Screen

6.2.1 General Information

6.2.1.1 Overview

The driver's screen is an interactive display which provides useful information to the driver. The driver's screen is designed to display important information about the vehicle's systems and features.

Opening the driver's door will activate the screen to display the information. The multifunction steering wheel controls allow you to scroll through the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.

The driver's screen is divided into three tiles.

1. Information tile
2. Center tile
3. Functions tile

6.2.1.2 Information tile

Information tile displays the information or important notes that are currently relevant to the vehicle and other helpful information.

The information tile can be accessed to meet personal preferences using the left side steering mounted control.

Vehicle statistics

Information tile provides vehicle statistics with respect to "Current Drive" or "Current Trip" or "Last Charge." With the help of left side steering mounted control driver can toggle the information and reset.

It gives travel duration, average speed, distance travel, and average energy consumption since the last reset.

The below table describes icons and description related to vehicle statistics:

Icon	Description
	Duration of travel

	Average energy consumption
	Distance travel
	Average speed

Notifications

Vehicle system related notifications and pop ups are displayed in the information tile.

The notifications are displayed in order of importance, with the highest priority message being displayed first. After acknowledging the currently displayed notification using the left side steering mounted control other notifications can be checked.

Icon	Description
	Information
	Suggestion
	Service needed
	Warning

INFORMATION

Clearing a warning message does not rectify the fault. The associated telltale remains illuminated until the fault is rectified.

Notification timeout

If no action is taken on the displayed notification, it will be hidden automatically and stored after a specified time period.

To hide a warning notification, it must be acknowledged by the user using the left side steering mounted control.

Notification type	Timeout period
Information	5 Seconds
Suggestion	10 Seconds
Service needed	10 Seconds
Warning	No timeout

Checking stored notifications

Acknowledged or hidden notifications are stored in the vehicle system and can be displayed on the control display. Depending on the notification type, further actions can be selected.

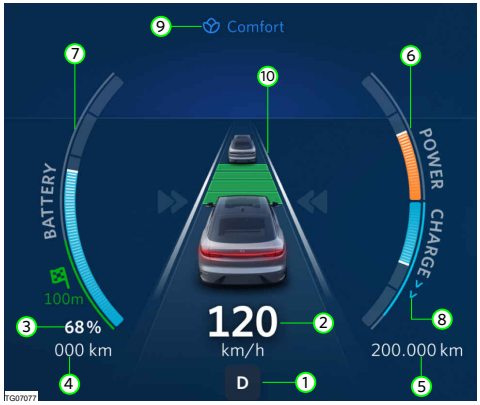
To check stored notifications,

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Page 2 → System Information → More → Message

6.2.1.3 Center tile

Center tile on the driver's screen displays the information related to the speed and high-voltage battery energy status.



1. Drive position
2. Speedometer
3. High-voltage battery State of Charge
4. Profile specific driving range
5. Odometer
6. Power meter
7. High-voltage battery State of Charge meter
8. Recuperation level indicator

9. Drive mode
10. Active safety

6.2.1.4 Functions tile

Functions tile provide the driver with a quick access to use the features using the steering mounted controls.

- Media:

  Displays the media information and allows to play, pause or change the track.

- Phone:

  Display phone call notification and possible to make a call. When call is received notification appears and desired action can be taken as per user preference.

- Drive assist mode:

  Displays driver assist function status and allows to activate/deactivate.

  - Adaptive cruise control
  - Adaptive driver assist
  - Speed limiter
  - Traffic sign speed limit

INFORMATION

The driver can activate only one function at a time from the list below:

- ***Cruise control***
- ***Adaptive driver assist***
- ***Speed Limiter***
- ***Adaptive cruise control***

If one function is activated, the system will automatically deactivate the other if already active.

- Lane support:

  Quick access to lane safety assist function settings.

- Tire pressure:

  Displays the tire pressure information.

Display icons

The below table describes menu icons in the function tile:

Icon	Description
	Driver assistance
	Media
	Lane safety
	Phone
	Tire pressure

Activation/deactivation status

Some items are preceded by an icon to display their state.

Icon	Description
	Function is enabled
	Function is disabled
	Function is active
	Function is inactive

6.2.2 Indicators and Telltales

If any telltale or indicator appears on the driver's screen during the process of vehicle starting or driving, it means that the relevant system is in a certain state or has a fault. Some warning lights will illuminate or flash accompanied with warning tone or prompt message.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, check the description and take the corrective actions or r it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Do not ignore any telltale or information messages displayed on the driver's screen. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result

in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death.

The below table describes the telltale and its description.

Icon	Description
	Auto hold active (Icon is steady)
	Auto hold failure (Icon is steady)
	When doors are open and gear selector is not in "P" (Icon is steady)
	Low beam deactivated by rain-light sensor (Icon is steady)
	Electric tailgate fault (Icon is steady)
	Acoustic vehicle alerting system error (Icon is steady)
	Seat belt not fastened or error (Icon is steady or flashing)
	Brake fluid level low (Icon is steady)
	Electronic stability control malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Electronic stability control in control (Icon is steady)
	Airbag system error (Icon is steady)
	Front passenger airbag deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage battery error (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage battery state of health low (Icon is steady)
	Level 1: Warning take steering wheel control (Icon is steady)
	Level 2: Warning take steering wheel control The system will be deactivated very soon (Icon is steady)
	Light failure (Icon is steady)
	Change brake pads (Icon is steady)
	Collision avoidance manually deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Advanced emergency braking alert (Icons is flashing with warning sound)
	Forward collision assist malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Advanced emergency braking limited performance (Icon is steady)
	Electric power steering error (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage battery level low (Icon is steady)
	Charging cable plugged (Icon is steady)
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction (Icon is flashing)
	Tire pressure system abnormal (Icon is steady)

	Electric parking brake failure (Icon is steady)
	Electric parking brake engaged or Electronic brake force distribution warning (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent brake booster service warning or regenerative brake control service warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine performance limited error (Icon is steady)
	Engine system warning (Icon is steady)
	Engine system error (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system warning (Icon is steady)
	High-voltage system fault (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system error (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system coolant level low (Icon is steady)
	Child presence detection deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)
	Level 1: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected (Icon is steady)
	Level 2: Blind spot warning left when the object is detected and any door is opened (Icon is flashing)

	Level 1: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected. (Icon is steady)
	Level 2: Blind spot warning right when the object is detected and any door is opened (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control passive (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control failure (Icon is steady)
	Adaptive cruise control active but overriden (Icon is flashing)
	Adaptive cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control active (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control active but overriden (Icon is flashing)
	Cruise control standby (Icon is steady)
	Cruise control failure (Icon is steady)

	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in an active state (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is active, and longitudinal control is in an override state (Icon is slow flashing)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is at the system boundary and the longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is fast flashing)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in standby state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral and longitudinal controls are in a failure state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal controls is in an active state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in failure and longitudinal control is in a passive state. (Icon is steady)
	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an active state. (Icon is steady)

	The adaptive driver assistance system's lateral control is in passive state and longitudinal control is in an error state. (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is overridden (Icon is flashing)
	Speed limiter is in a standby state (Icon is steady)
	Speed limiter is in an error state (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter active but overriden (Icon is flashing)
	Intelligent speed limiter standby (Icon is steady)
	Intelligent speed limiter failure (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist is activated (Icon is steady)

	Lane safety assist is in passive state (Icon is steady)
	Emergency lane keeping is deactivated and Lane departure warning is in passive state (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist failure (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist deactivated (Icon is steady)
	Lane safety assist in control (Icon is flashing)
	Emergency lane keeping is deactivated and Lane departure warning is in standby state (Icon is steady)
	Lane departure prevention-oncoming traffic failure (Icon is steady)
	Speed limit assist function is disabled (Icon is steady)
	Speed limit assist function failure (Icon is steady)
	Icy road (Icon is steady)

	Anti-lock braking system failure (Icon is steady)
	Right turning light active (Icon is flashing)
	Left turning light active (Icon is flashing)
	Accessory mode On (Icon is steady)
	Drive ready state active (Icon is steady)
	Standby mode On (Icon is steady)
	Rear collision warning (Icon is flashing)
	High beam light assist active and Off (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist is activated and recommended On (Icon is steady)
	High beam active (Icon is steady)

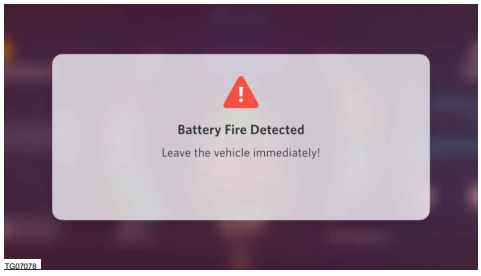
	High beam light assist activated but recommended "Off" or High beam light assist is not activated (Icon is steady)
	Low beam active (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist error (Icon is steady)
	Position light active (Icon is steady)
	Drowsiness detection unavailable (Icon is steady)
	Drowsiness detection error (Icon is steady)
	eCall (Emergency Call) malfunction (Icon is steady)
	Front fog light active (Icon is steady)
	Parking lights active (left or right) (Icon is steady)
	Rear fog light active (Icon is steady)

	Hill descent control active (Icon is flashing)
	Hill descent control enabled (Icon is steady)
	Hill descent control failure (Icon is steady)
	Cross traffic alert/Brake left (Icon is steady)
	Cross traffic alert/Brake right (Icon is steady)
	One pedal drive with hold active (Icon is steady)
	One pedal drive with hold is braking the vehicle (Icon is steady)
	Blind side collision avoidance error (Icon is steady)
	Blind side collision avoidance right side (Icon is steady)
	Blind side collision avoidance left side (Icon is steady)

	Corner radar error telltale (Icon is steady)
90	Detected speed limit is displayed in the circle on driver's screen (Icon is steady)
	Accept or reject the recommended speed limit (Icon is steady)

High-voltage battery fire warning

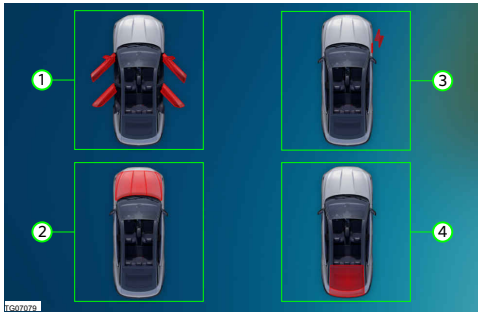
A warning message is displayed on the driver's screen, main screen and control display when the system detects fire in the high-voltage battery.



Door, hood and tailgate warning

The driver's screen displays a warning if any doors, the hood, the tailgate, or the charging lid are open once the vehicle has been unlocked and while the vehicle is in motion.

Example of warning display:



1. Door open (Relevant door graphic is displayed)
2. Hood open
3. Charging lid open
4. Tailgate open

Close all the doors and tailgate tightly until the icon disappears.

6.2.3 Operating Driver's Screen

6.2.3.1 Overview

WARNING

There is a risk of an accident due to driver distraction. Operate the driver screen when the traffic condition allows you to do so.

6.2.3.2 Operating the information display (1)

- To scroll through the information tile menu, touch "Left" or "Right" on the left side steering mounted control (B).
- To select desired action for notification, touch "Up" or "Down" and press at the "Center" on the left side steering mounted control (B).
- To reset the selected trip information, touch "Down" and press at the "Center."

6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu (2)

- To switch between function tile, touch "Left" or "Right" on the right side steering mounted control (A).
- To scroll through the selected function list, touch "Up" or "Down" on the right side steering mounted control (A).
- To select or activate/deactivate the desired function, press at "Center" on the right side steering mounted control (A).

- Use the slider softly to increase/decrease the volume when the media or phone function is active.

  Softly press at lower side on the slider to mute the media.

6.2.4 Digital Assistant (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Do not use digital assistant function in an emergency, your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may not recognize voice and leading to undesired phone call connection.

Digital assistant function communicates with the driver and provides assistance to complete various task while driving. The function acts on and reacts to voice input.

You can use the digital assistant function to operate the following functions:

- Phone
- Media
- Navigation
- Owner's Manual
- Vehicles functions

Using digital assistant

Digital assistant function can be used when the following requirements are fulfilled:

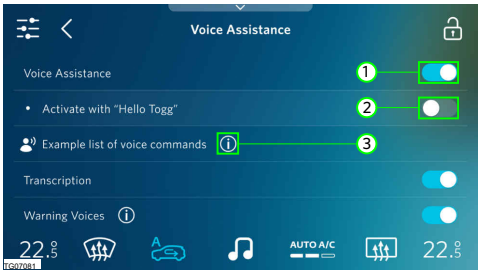
- Vehicle is in ready to drive state
- No active phone call
- Park assist is in passive state

Digital assistant turn On/Off

Digital assistant function can be turned On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Voice Assistance



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the digital assistant function.
- Tap on the button (2) to activate the digital assistant with "Hello Togg" command, when the digital assistant is active.
- Tap on the information icon (3) to view the voice commands examples.

Starting digital assistant command

- Press the "Digital assistant" button on the steering wheel.

Or

- Say "Hello Togg."

Cancelling digital assistant command

When the digital assistant is active and waiting for a voice input:

- Press the "Digital assistant" button on the steering wheel.

Or

- Say "Cancel."

6.3 Control Screen

6.3.1 Control Display Overview

1. Main screen widget

   Set widgets are displayed on the main screen.
2. Quick access

   Swipe down to open quick access menu.
3. Apps on smart device

   Drag and drop selected app to main screen widget.

   Swipe left or right to access more apps.
4. Menu

   Tap to open vehicle functions menu.
5. Central lock

   Tap to Lock/Unlock the vehicle.
6. Tru Store

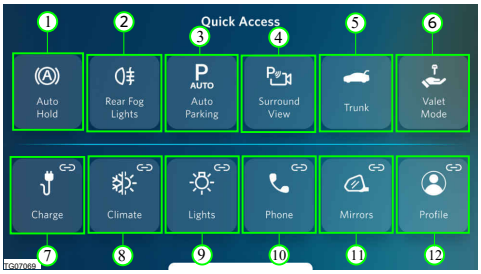
   Tap to open Tru Store.
7. Climate control

   Tap on the buttons to access the climate control settings.
8. Media volume

   Tap on button to On/Off the volume.

6.3.2 Quick Access

Slide down on the control display to open the quick access menu.



It allows access to the commonly used functions. Additional controls and settings for some of the following features are available on the feature specific tabs.

1. Auto hold On/Off
2. Rear fog lights On/Off
3. Auto parking On/Off
4. Surround view system On/Off
5. Trunk Open/Close
6. Valet mode
7. Charge
8. Climate
9. Lights
10. Phone
11. Mirrors
12. Profile

6.3.3 Using Control Display

Many of the vehicle functions and equipment features can be controlled and adjusted through the control display. The control display is a touchscreen that responds to taps and other gestures.

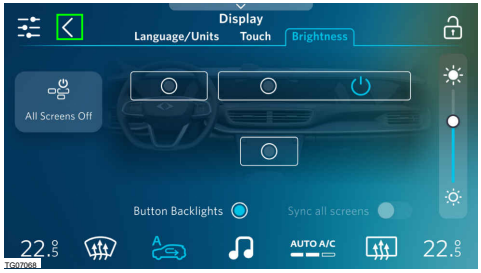
Use the following finger gestures to control the control display.

Gesture	Description
	**Tap:** Tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.
	**Swipe:** Swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the display and then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

	Drag: Drag is used to move applications or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when the vehicle is parked and not in motion.
	Pinch: Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place your finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.
	Spread: Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.
	Tap and hold: Tap and hold can be used for opening the widget edit page.

Back page

To go to the back page in any function or setting, tap on the "Back" button.



6.4 Main Screen

6.4.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. Never operate the main screen while driving. Always follow the traffic regulations.

The main screen is used to display widgets, such as Navigation, Media and Apps. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is in motion.

The following types of widgets are shown on the main screen:

1. Permanent widget
2. Temporary widget
3. Quick information widget

The main screen is a touch screen display. To use the touchscreen display, 6.3.3 Using Control Display .

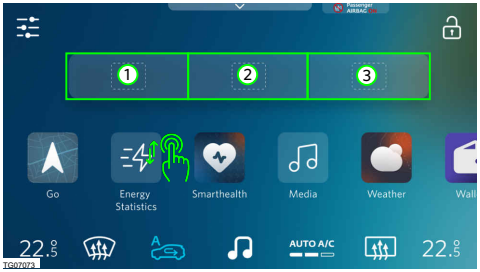
6.4.2 Permanent Widget

Depending upon the user selection, widget for the main screen can be selected from the control display. The selected widgets will be displayed on the main screen permanently until the settings are changed.

6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page



2. Long press on the desired app and drag to the desired tile location (1, 2 or 3).

6.4.4 Temporary Widget

The system automatically displays the temporary widget on the main screen to help the user when the following function is activated:

- Phone
- Park assist

Once the function is deactivated, the previously stored widget will be shown on the main screen.

6.4.5 Quick Information Widget

The quick information widget shows the information at a glance, such as a date and time, data connection or device connection.

Some of the common symbols are listed in the table:

Icon	Description

	3G network internet connection available
	Bluetooth active
	Hotspot active
	Advance 4G network internet connection available
	Message/Notification received
	No network signal
	Roaming network available
	Signal strength. Bar indicates strength of signal
	Protected Wi-Fi network available
	Unprotected Wi-Fi network available

Connected device status display:

Notification and device status information for the connected device is displayed in quick information widget.

Icon	Description
	Signal strength
	Device battery level
	Connected device available for media
	Connected device available for phone calls
	Missed call notification

6.4.6 Entering the Text

When you touch on the main screen or control display for entering a navigation destination or search term, an input field appears.

The text in the field can be entered using the control display.

The below table describes the icons on the text entering the display.

Icon	Description
	Keyboard input
	Delete/Erase text
	Close text entering display

Using keyboard

1. Touch on the input field. A keyboard appears on the control display.
2. Enter the desired text in the field using the keyboard on the control display.

Using voice command

1. Touch on the input field. A keyboard appears on the control display.
2. Tap on the voice command button.
3. Speak the desired word. The entered text is displayed on the input field.

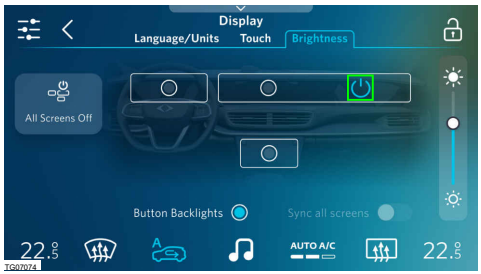
6.4.7 Activating/Deactivating the Main Screen

The main screen will be turned On each time when the vehicle is turned On. Touching the screen will open the screen as well.

To manually turn On/Off the main screen:

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → General → Display → Brightness



- Tap on the button to turn On/Off the main screen.

6.4.8 Rotary Knob

6.4.8.1 Overview

The rotary knob functions as a navigator on the main screen. It can be used to select the menu items or widget and perform operations like Enter the setting, Play or Pause media etc. on the main screen.

INFORMATION

When the rotary knob is in static mode it acts as a volume control when rotated and central locking button when pressed.

6.4.8.2 Operating rotary knob

1. Rotate

2. Press

3. Tilt

6.4.9 Main Screen Interaction

6.4.9.1 Overview

The main screen is a touch screen display which allows clicks and scroll in the widgets. When any widget is added on the main screen, the user has the option to operate it by touch or using the rotary knob.

6.4.9.2 Using the rotary knob for widget interaction

1. Tilt down the rotary knob, widget interaction is enabled.
2. Rotate the rotary knob to navigate between the widgets on the main screen. Widget is highlighted while navigation.
3. Press the rotary knob to enter the desired widget or tilt down the rotary knob to cancel the selection.
4. Rotate the knob to navigate inside the selected widget.
5. Press the knob to perform desired action.

INFORMATION

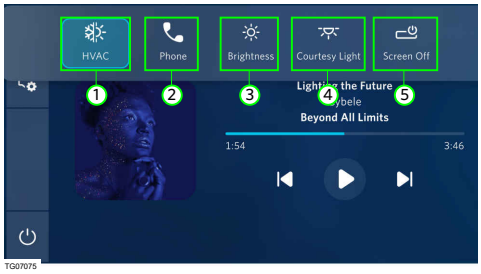
If no action is performed with the rotary knob, it will come to static mode after 15 seconds.

6.4.10 Main Screen Quick Access Overlay

6.4.10.1 Overview

When the rotary knob is tilted up the quick access overlay appears on the main screen. This allows to quickly access some of the vehicle function settings without using the control display.

The following function settings can be changed:



1. Climate Control
2. Phone
3. Brightness
4. Courtesy Light
5. Screen Off

6.4.10.2 Using the rotary knob for climate control overlay

1. Tilt up the rotary knob, quick access overlay appears on the main screen.
2. Rotate the rotary knob to navigate through the quick access overlay menu. Function is highlighted while navigation.
3. Press the rotary knob to enter the desired function. Press again to deselect the function.
4. Rotate the rotary knob to make desired changes and press to exit the function.
5. Tilt down the rotary knob, quick access overlay disappears on the main screen.

6.5 HMI Settings

6.5.1 Display Settings

6.5.1.1 Overview

The appearance and brightness of the displays (Driver's Screen, Main Screen, and Control Display) can be adjusted using the control display and main screen.

6.5.1.2 Display brightness

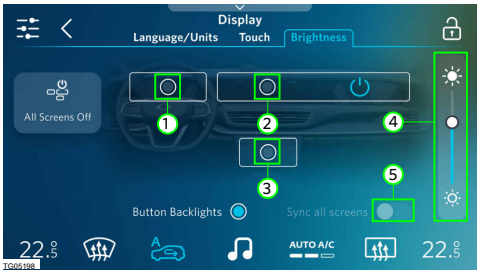
⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the display brightness when the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control.

Using the control display, display brightness can be adjusted.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Brightness



To adjust the display brightness individually,

1. Tap on the button (1), (2), or (3) to select the desired screen.
2. Adjust the brightness using the slider (4).

The display brightness settings can be applied to all screens at the same time using the "Sync all screens" function.

To synchronize all display brightness settings,

1. Tap on the button (5) to enable the "Sync all screens" function.
2. Adjust the brightness using the slider (4).

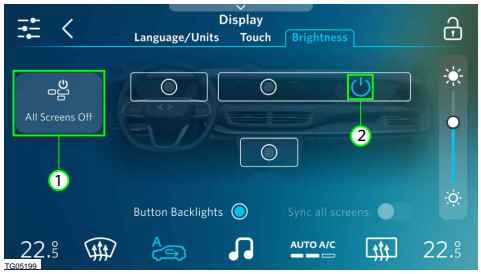
6.5.1.3 Switching Off screens

All screens in the vehicle can be turned off using the control display when the vehicle is in "Standby" or "Accessory" mode.

The main screen can be turned Off/On individually irrespective of vehicle mode.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Brightness



- Tap on the button (1) to turn Off all screens.
- Tap on the button (2) to turn On/Off the main screen.

Additionally, the main screen can be turned on or off from the main controls page 6.3.2 Quick Access

INFORMATION

"All Screen Off" button is disabled when the vehicle is in "Ready" mode.

6.5.1.4 Button backlight brightness

Button backlight brightness can be adjusted using the control display.

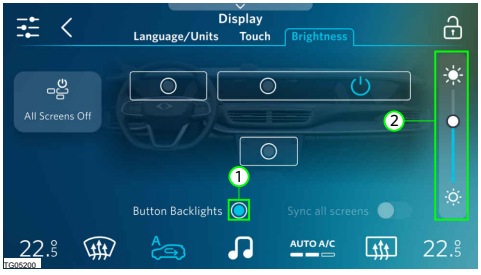
Requirement:

- Low beams are On.

To adjust brightness,

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Brightness



2. Tap on the button (1) and adjust the brightness using the slider (2).

6.5.1.5 Wallpaper

The wallpaper applied to the display can be changed using control display.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Wallpaper

2. Select the desired wallpaper.

6.5.2 Time

Changing time zone

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Language & Format

2. Select to edit "Time Zone."
3. Set the desired time zone.

6.5.3 Units and Language

With this function, you can change the unit and language for the menu displays and the navigation. The navigation announcements work for the selected language.

INFORMATION

Do not change to a language you do not understand well as it can be difficult to find your way back through the menu.

Changing units

You can change the units for the following functions using the control display:

- Distance
- Temperature
- Pressure

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Language & Format

2. Change the unit of desired functions.

Changing the language

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Language & Format

2. Change the language to "Tr" or "En".

6.5.4 Sound Settings

The sound settings are preset and calibrated using signal processing, but it can be adjusted.

The system volume can be adjusted using the right side steering wheel control switch or rotary knob or control display. This applies when playing music and the radio or during phone calls and traffic announcements.

The sound settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Sound

Or

Control Display → Media/Radio Page → "Tap on the Sound Setting Icon"

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sound settings can be changed:

Equalizer

This setting will adjust the “Bass”, "Low Mid”, “Mid”, “High Mid” and “Treble” ranges of the audio.

Balance and Fader

This setting will adjust audio levels from specific speakers in the front/back and left/right of the vehicle.

Meridian Sound (if equipped)

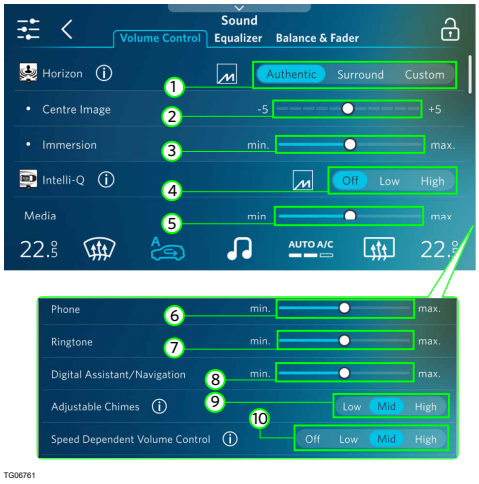
The Meridian sound setting will adjust surround sound by selecting the default equalizer mode. Four default equalizers are available for selection. Additionally, desired equalizer settings can be adjusted according to requirements and reset using custom equalizer mode.

Volume control

Volume setting for various vehicle systems such as Media, Phone, and Navigation can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Sound → Volume Control



TG06761

- Tap on the button (1) to set the desired audio experience.

  The function provides natural immersive and customizable audio experiences for all the listeners.
- Tap on the button (2) to change the centre image position.

  Move the position of the vocal image from the nearside door to the centre of the car.
- Tap on the button (3) to set the desired immersion setting.

  The function controls the amount of enveloping ambience for a personalised sense of immersion.
- Tap on the button (4) to set the desired Intelli – Q setting.

  The function dynamically adjusts the sound to maintain the consistent audio performance in all listening conditions.
- Tap on the button (5) to adjust the media volume.
- Tap on the button (6) to adjust the phone volume.
- Tap on the button (7) to adjust the ringtone volume.
- Tap on the button (8) to adjust the navigation system volume.
- Tap on the button (9) to set the desired adjustable chimes volume.

  Park sensor and door open chimes will be adjusted according to this setting.
- Tap on the button (10) to set the desired speed dependent volume control setting.

The function adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

6.6 Profiles & Customization

6.6.1 Profiles

The profiles saves personal settings. If a vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each one can activate their own personal settings and customizations with the Togg account registered email address or Trumore login.

The system allows you to create multiple profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle settings, such as seats and mirrors, exterior light, wiper and window, and balance and fader settings. Each profile will be assigned with the settings that is last used in the vehicle.

Before you begin your journey, you can select a user profile on the main screen and load personalised infotainment and vehicle settings to get better driving experience.

Login or profile activation by Trumore login can already be done while unlocking the vehicle. For this purpose, profile recognition by must be assigned to Trumore login or profile.

When creating, modifying, deleting or editing a Trumore login or profile, the vehicle must travel at maximum walking speed.

For more information about Trumore login, 1.2 Trumore Login

Requirement:

To create, change or delete a profile following requirements should meet:

- Driver door is closed
- The vehicle is stationary
- Driver seat belt is fastened

Profile information protection:

When a new profile is added to the vehicle, access protection is already activated for the profile. The Trumore login password, password and face recognition are available for profile access protection.

The following profile specific information is protected:

- Profile settings and customizations
- Trumore services
- Probable navigation destinations, contacts and messages, media sources and radio stations.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Delete
	Locked profile
	Open profile

6.6.2 Welcome and Goodbye Screen

When the vehicle is unlocked and is in accessory mode, welcome screen is displayed on the main screen and control display.

Main screen welcome content depends on the following conditions:

- When no profile or Trumore login added:

  An option to add new profile is displayed.
- When profiles are added but key is not linked:

  Stored profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, an option to add new profile is displayed.

The following options are displayed on the control display welcome screen:

- Login to profile using Togg account registered email/Trumore login
- Use Guest Profile without logging in
- Change system language (English or Turkish)

When the vehicle is turned Off or is in Standby mode and the driver door is opened, goodbye screen is displayed on the main screen.

The following information is displayed on the main screen:

- Upcoming departure plan details
- Target high-voltage battery state of charge if the departure plan is set
- Target temperature if the departure plan is set
- Antitheft alarm status
- Current high-voltage battery state of charge
- Maximum driving range
- Profile specific driving range

The following options are displayed on the control display:

- Set departure plan
- Set antitheft alarm

- Charge now

6.6.3 Managing the Profiles

6.6.3.1 Adding the profile

A new profile can be added to the vehicle using the main screen.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Tap on the "Add With Email."
3. Follow the instructions to create a new profile.

6.6.3.2 Deleting the profile

A profile can be deleted using the control display.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General →Profile → Manage Profiles

3. Tap on the delete icon in front of the profile to be deleted.
4. Tap on "Yes" and enter your current password to delete the profile.

6.6.3.3 Changing the profile password

Profile can be changed using the control display.

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General → Profile → Settings

2. Tap on the "Change Password."
3. Enter the current password and follow the instruction on the control display to change the password.

A message "Your Password Changed Successfully" appears on the control display after successful password change.

6.6.4 Activating the Profile

⚠ WARNING

Activating a profile may trigger driver's seat position adjustment stored for the profile, there is a risk of becoming trapped. Always keep the seat movement area free while activating the profile or adjusting the seats.

INFORMATION

If the profile is activated when the vehicle is in motion then the driver's seat position will not be adjusted.

When you log in with the Trumore login or the profile in the vehicle, the stored settings are activated. If the profile is not detected when unlocking the vehicle, it can be manually activated.

When the vehicle is unlocked and is in accessory mode you can select and activate profile using the below option:

Login with Trumore login

1. Select "Add with email."
2. Enter your Togg account registered email address/Trumore login.
3. Set new password for your profile.
4. Configure the profile recognition e.g. Face recognition.

   Profile recognition can be set or changed later on from settings.

6.6.5 Face Recognition

6.6.5.1 Overview

Face recognition uses facial recognition to identify the driver and then loads a matching user profile. You can unlock your profile with a facial scan.

6.6.5.2 Adding the face recognition

1. Close the driver's door or fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Look at the driver infrared camera for about five seconds and then move your head in a circle.

A message on the control display shows whether the face recognition was successful or not.

When the face recognition is set for the profile, you can unlock profile with the facial scan without entering the profile password.

6.6.5.3 Removing the face recognition

The added facial recognition data for the profile can be removed using the control display.

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General → Profile → Settings

2. Tap on the "Face Recognition" button and follow the instructions on the control display.

A message "Recognized Face Removed" appears on the control display after successfully removing the facial recognition data.

6.6.5.4 Limitations of face recognition

Profile unlocking with the face recognition may not work properly in the following cases:

- If the driver infrared camera is obstructed by body parts (hands or arms), objects, condensation, mist or contaminated by non-transparent dust, or dirt.
- If the driver's face is covered with clothing, hair fringe, a large hat or a face mask.

6.6.6 Valet Mode

6.6.6.1 Overview

In the valet mode, the vehicle acceleration and certain vehicle function is limited to reduce the risk of damage to and improper use of the vehicle. This mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over to valet service for parking.

When the valet mode is activated, the following limitations are applied:

- Maximum vehicle speed is limited to 40 km/h.
- Certain Trumore functions cannot be used.
- Vehicle settings cannot be changed.
- Personal data cannot be accessed.

The following information can be monitored on the main screen when the valet mode is activated:

- The number of passwords attempted to unlock the valet mode
- Total driving time in the valet mode
- Total distance travelled in the valet mode

INFORMATION

For deactivating the valet mode, password is required.

6.6.6.2 Activating the valet mode

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General → Profile → Settings

   Or

   Control Display → Quick Access

3. Tap on the "Valet Mode" button.

A message "Valet Mode Activated" appears on the control display after successful valet mode activation.

6.6.6.3 Deactivating the valet mode

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General → Profile → Settings

   Or

   Control Display → Quick Access

3. Tap on the "Valet Mode" button.
4. Enter the current profile password to deactivate the valet mode.

INFORMATION

The valet mode remains active after changing the profile or turning the vehicle On or Off and must be intentionally deactivated by an authorized user.

6.6.7 Guest Profile

6.6.7.1 Overview

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone and can store settings in the vehicle. It is recommended to use the guest profile temporarily, as the settings can be changed by other users.

The guest profile is automatically activated in the following cases:

- A Trumore login has not yet been added or a profile has not yet been created.

The key used to unlock the vehicle has no Trumore login or profile assigned.

6.6.7.2 Activating the guest profile

The guest profile can be selected manually when the welcome screen is active.

On control display:

- Tap on the guest button to activate the guest profile.

On main screen:

- Tap on the guest button to activate the guest profile.

6.6.7.3 Guest profile limitations

- The guest profile name cannot be changed.
- A password cannot be assigned to a guest profile.
- Driver detection cannot be assigned to a guest profile.

6.6.8 Vehicle Factory Defaults

This function will delete all profile settings to their factory default.

1. Turn On the vehicle and shift the gear selector to "P" mode.
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Menu → General → Profile → Settings

3. Tap on the "Set Factory Default" button to reset all profile settings.

A message "Profile Reset Successfully" appears on the control display after resetting the profile to factory settings.

6.7 Connections

6.7.1 Safety Instructions

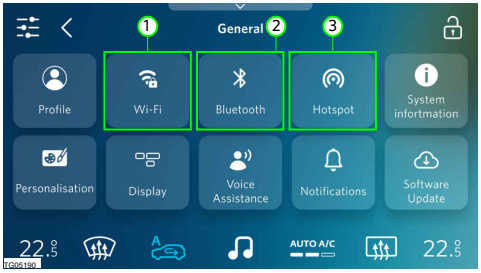
⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control or distraction when using communication devices while driving. Only operate the system or devices if the traffic condition allows to do so. If necessary, stop the vehicle and operate the system or devices.

6.7.2 General Information

The mobile and communication devices can be connected to the vehicle using various types of connections. A connection type can be selected depending on the device and function.

Paired devices are automatically recognized and connected to the vehicle.



1. Wi-Fi
2. Bluetooth
3. Hotspot

Select relevant function to change the settings.

6.7.3 Bluetooth

6.7.3.1 Overview

Bluetooth enabled phone paired to the vehicle can be used to make calls, send/receive text messages, wirelessly play media from the vehicle, or connect the vehicle to the internet.

Two Bluetooth devices can be connected to the vehicle at the same time, but only one device can be used for wireless playback. The most recent paired device will be marked as a primary device. It is possible to change the primary device under Bluetooth settings.

6.7.3.2 Connecting the device

The devices first need to be paired with the vehicle with a verification process to connect them with the vehicle.

The pairing procedure can be done from the device or vehicle.

Pairing from the vehicle:

Follow the below procedure to pair a device to the vehicle.

1. Turn On Bluetooth on your device and make your phone visible/discoverable.
2. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Bluetooth → New Devices

3. Turn On Bluetooth. Available devices in the range are displayed on the control display.
4. Select the device to be connected.
5. Confirm that the PIN/verification code on your device matches the one shown on the display.
6. After successful verification, your device is paired.

Pairing from the device:

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Bluetooth → New Devices

2. Make sure to enable the "Visible to nearby devices".
3. Turn On Bluetooth on your device and search for the vehicle's name in the list.
4. Select the vehicle's name from the list.
5. Confirm that the PIN/verification code on your device matches the one shown on the display.
6. After successful verification, your device is paired.

Connecting the already paired devices:

1. Turn On Bluetooth on your device.
2. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Bluetooth → Paired Devices

3. Turn On Bluetooth. Paired devices will be displayed on the control display.
4. Tap on the device name to be connected.

6.7.3.3 Disconnecting the device

The device can be disconnected by:

- Deactivating the Bluetooth on the device.
- Deactivating the vehicle Bluetooth.
- When the device is out of the range of the vehicle, it will be automatically deactivated.

6.7.3.4 Managing the connected devices

Phones or other devices in the list of paired Bluetooth devices can be removed.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Bluetooth → Paired Devices

2. Tap on delete button in front of device name to be deleted.
3. Tap on confirm or cancel to remove or keep the paired device.

INFORMATION

If the number of paired devices in the list is more than 20, the new device cannot be connected to the vehicle. If required, remove the paired devices to connect a new device.

6.7.3.5 Setting a device as default device

The paired device can be set as default device using control display. When more than one devices are paired and frequently used in vehicle at the same time, set default device will automatically connect.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General→ Bluetooth → Paired Devices

2. Tap on device name to set it as default device.
3. Tap the confirm button that appears on the popup.

6.7.4 Wi-Fi

6.7.4.1 Overview

Wi-Fi is available as a data connection method and is often faster than cellular data networks. Connecting to Wi-Fi is especially useful in areas with limited or no cellular connectivity. To ensure fast, reliable delivery of software and map updates, it is recommended to leave your vehicle connected to a Wi-Fi network whenever possible (for example, if parked in your garage overnight).

6.7.4.2 Connecting to Wi-Fi

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Wi-Fi

2. Turn on the Wi-Fi. Available network list is displayed.
3. Select the network you want to connect. If required, enter the password and confirm.

4. Enable the auto connect to join the network whenever it is available.

INFORMATION

- ***In case entered password is incorrect, the wrong password popup will appear on the control display.***
- ***When the vehicle is outside the Wi-Fi network, the out of range popup will appear on the control display.***

6.7.4.3 Managing the networks

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Wi-Fi

2. Tap on manage networks, list of networks is displayed.
3. Tap the name of the network you would like to remove.
4. Tap on the delete button and confirm. The selected network is removed.

6.7.4.4 Connect to other

It is also possible to connect Wi-Fi using the "connect to other" function if MAC address, network name and password are available.

1. Go to.

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Wi-Fi

2. Tap on the connect to other.
3. Enter the network name, password and MAC address.
4. Tap on the join button to connect Wi-Fi network.

6.7.5 Hotspot

6.7.5.1 Overview

You can create a Wi-Fi Hotspot in your vehicle and allow compatible devices to connect and access the internet.

6.7.5.2 Activating/Deactivating the hotspot

Your vehicle hotspot can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

The number of devices connected to the hotspot is displayed on the screen.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Hotspot

To activate/deactivate the hotspot, tap on the Hotspot button.

6.7.5.3 Changing the name and password of the hotspot

Follow the below steps to change the name and password of the vehicle hotspot:

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Hotspot

2. Press on the current hotspot name.
3. Enter your required hotspot name and save.
4. Press on the current password.
5. Enter your required password and save.

6.7.5.4 Connecting the device

The devices can be connected to the hotspot by using the Hotspot Name and password.

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Hotspot

2. On your device, switch On Wi-Fi.
3. Select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
4. Enter the password when prompted.
5. Your device is connected.

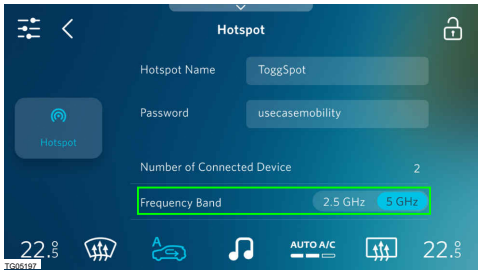
6.7.5.5 Changing the frequency band

The vehicle supports 2.5 GHz and 5 GHz Wi-Fi bands. 5 GHz frequency band offers more speed than 2.5 GHz frequency band. 2.5 GHz frequency band cover the larger area than 5 GHz frequency band.

The band can be selected as per requirement using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General→ Hotspot



- Tap on frequency band to select it.

6.8 Togg Widgets

6.8.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control.***
  - ***Drivers should never text message, access social media, check emails, or search the internet while driving. Using any of these features while driving diverts attention from the road.***
  - ***Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.***
- ***The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.***
- ***Even when using the Bluetooth hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.***
- ***Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.***

6.8.2 Media Player

Tap the Audio widget or swipe up the media overlay on the control display to view the active media source. Examples of available sources include FM, Bluetooth, and media apps.

Volume and media selection can be controlled by using the control display or right side steering mounted switch or the connected device.

⚠ ATTENTION

When using media devices such as USB and mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance and should be avoided.

Volume

When media is playing, or a call is in progress, you can control the volume with following options:

1. Right side steering wheel control
2. Rotary knob
3. Slider on the control display

For more volume settings, 6.5.4 Sound Settings .

Accessing media with Bluetooth

You can play music from the paired Bluetooth device.

1. Connect the device to vehicle with Bluetooth. (6.7.3.2 Connecting the device)
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source

3. Select the paired Bluetooth device.
4. Play the media on the connected device. Media will begin to play.

Accessing media with the internet

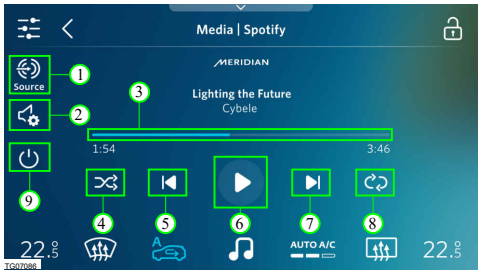
When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it is also possible to access music services via apps.

1. Connect the vehicle to the internet. (6.7.4.2 Connecting to Wi-Fi)
2. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source

3. Open the desired App to play the media. Media will begin to play.

Media Controls



1. Media Source
   - Tap to select the desired media source.
2. Sound Settings
   - Tap to change the sound settings. (6.5.4 Sound Settings)
3. Track Position
   - The bar shows the current playback position in the track.
4. Shuffle
   - When this function is switched On, all tracks in the selected playlist will play in random order.
5. Seek Backward
   - Tap to select previous media or track.
   - Tap and hold to rewind within a track.
   - Tap after 4 seconds to restart the selected media or track.
6. Play/Pause
   - Tap to play or pause the current media source.
7. Seek Forward
   - Tap to select next media or track.
   - Tap and hold to fast forward a track.
8. Repeat (Off/Playlist/Track)
   - Tap to repeat the selected track or playlist continuously in loop or turn Off the repeat.
9. Volume Control
   - Set the desired volume or mute the media.
10. On/Off
    - Tap to turn On or Off the media player.

6.8.3 Phone

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile device must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile device manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the device.

For more information on pairing, 6.7.3.2 Connecting the device .

Making a call using contacts and recent calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all cell phones that support the Phone Book feature.

The contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone, if phone book access is allowed while pairing the phone. The recent menu accesses the recent call list from your cell phone.

Using contacts

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Phone → "Contacts" or "Recents"

2. The contacts list can be searched by touching the "Search" icon. Scroll on the control display through the list of names.
3. Touch the desired contact number to call.

Using recents

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Phone → Recents

2. Tap the name or number to call.

Making a call using the keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Phone → Keypad

2. Enter a phone number.
3. Tap "Call" icon on the control display to start dialing the number.

Accepting or declining a call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

- Use the right steering wheel touch pad to select "Accept Call" icon to accept a call.
- Tap "Accept Call" icon on the control display or main screen to accept a call.

Declining a Call

- Use the right steering wheel touch pad to select "End Call" icon to decline a call.
- Tap "End Call" icon on the control display or main screen to decline a call.

Ending a Call

- Use the right steering wheel touch pad to select "End Call" icon to end a call.
- Tap "End Call" icon on the control display or main screen to end a call.

Managing calls

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled using the control display or main screen.

1. Tap on the "Add call" icon.
2. Tap on the "Contacts" to display the list of saved contacts or tap on the "Keypad" icon to enter the number.

Transfer call

When the phone call is received, the source (Vehicle or Mobile) of speaker can be changed using this function.

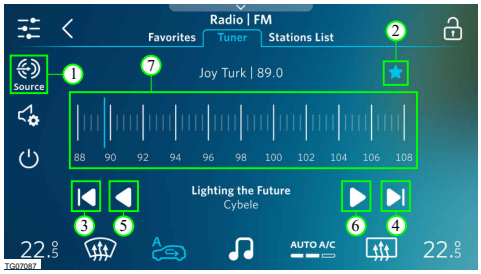
- Tap "Transfer to vehicle" or "Transfer to mobile" icon on the control display to transfer the call.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Accept call or Make a call
	End call or Decline call
	Missed call

	Add calls
	Favourite contacts
	Hold
	Incoming call
	Outgoing call
	Transfer to mobile
	Transfer to vehicle
	List
	Mute
	Keypad
	Merge calls
	Swap calls

6.8.4 Radio



You can receive available radio stations on different frequency bands and store your favorites to station for main controls. The radio supports the FM and DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) frequency ranges.

Playing radio

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio

2. Tap on the button (1) to select source "FM" or "DAB" .
3. Select the desired station from "Favorite" or "Tuner" or "Stations List".

Searching and selecting station

Different radio stations are available depending on the selected frequency band.

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio → Tuner

2. Tap on the button (5) or (6).

Or

Turn the rotary knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the radio station frequency.

Or

Slide or tap your finger anywhere on the scale (7) to select a radio station.

Seek

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites or Tuner or Stations List

2. Tap on the button (3) or (4). The previous or next station from the list of stations is played.

Changing station

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites or Tuner or Stations List

2. Tap on the button (5) or (6) to change the station. The previous or next station from the list of stations is played.

Storing a station as a favorite

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio → Tuner or Stations List

2. Tap on the button (2) to store the station as favorite.

Managing favorite stations

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio → Favorites

2. Press on the button (2) to remove the station from favorite.

Changing station name

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Media → Source → Radio → Stations List

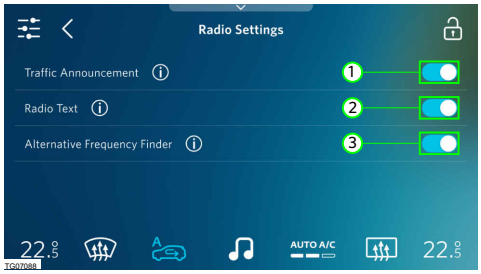
2. Long press on the desired station. Name edit option will appear.
3. Set the desired name and save.

Radio Settings

Radio settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Settings → Radio



Traffic announcement

The traffic announcement function monitors the reports from a set traffic news station and automatically outputs them during radio operation or media playback.

Activating/Deactivating traffic announcement

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "Traffic announcement" button (1).

Radio text

Program information (for example, general text messages, artist, composer, and song) is displayed on the display.

Activating/Deactivating radio text

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "Radio text" button (2).

Alternative frequency finder

When an alternative frequency finder is activated, the radio automatically switches to a new station when the previous one can no longer be received.

Automatic changeover is only possible if the corresponding station's signal is available in adequate quality and the IDs of the station match.

Activating/Deactivating alternative frequency finder

To activate/deactivate, tap on the "alternative frequency finder" button (3).

6.8.5 Owner's Manual

You can access the Owner's Manual using the control display. The Owner's Manual periodically updates with the latest information as long as the vehicle has internet connectivity.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Vehicle → Owner's Manual

For safety reasons, the Owner's Manual is deactivated while driving.

INFORMATION

You can also view the Owner's Manual with the Trumore App.

6.8.6 Navigation (Go)

6.8.6.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

- ***Operating the HMI system and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.***
- ***The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.***

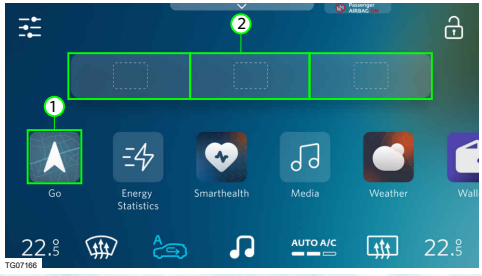
In the Togg smart device, "Go" application provides you location-based services that allows you to reach your destination with the best route considering traffic conditions or alternative routes.

After opening the "Go" application for the first time, the application will always open in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. At the beginning, the search bar also appears on the screen.

6.8.6.2 Launching Go application

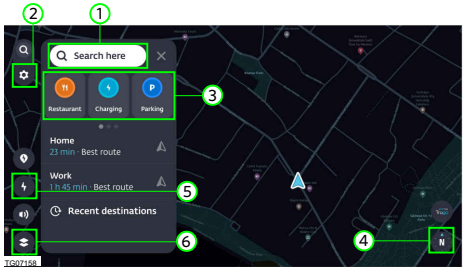
1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page



2. Drag and drop the Go application (1) on the free widget area (2). The Go application is launched on the main screen.

Map overview



1. Search here tab
2. Map settings
3. Point of interests
4. Map orientation
5. Reachable area with current charge
6. Satellite map view

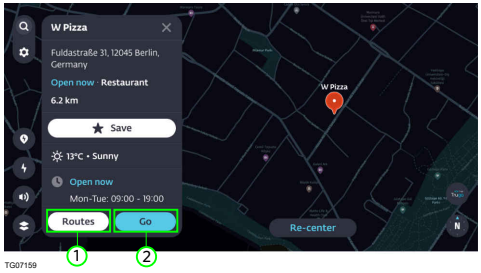
After launching the Go application for the first time, map can be displayed in the dark theme.

To change the map theme, go to:

Main Screen → Go Application → Settings

6.8.6.3 Selecting destination

After "Go" application is opened, destination can be entered using the following options:



Search bar

1. Tap on the "Search here" and enter the desired location/address/POI or geo-coordinate. Search results are listed and displayed on the main screen.
2. Select the desired destination from the list.
3. Alternative routes can be listed by tapping on the "Routes" button (1)

   Or,

   Tap on the "Go" button (2) to activate route guidance and the map is displayed.

Point of Interest categories

Points of Interest (POI) categories such as Food, Charging and Parking can be selected and added as destinations.

1. Tap on the POI Categories, such as "Food," "Charging" and "Parking." A list of available POIs nearby is displayed.
2. Select the desired POI.
3. Alternative routes can be listed by tapping on the "Routes" button

   Or,

   Tap on "Go" to activate route guidance and the map is displayed.

In POI details card, address, status, and weather conditions of destination POI can be observed.

6.8.6.4 Traffic

Routing with traffic

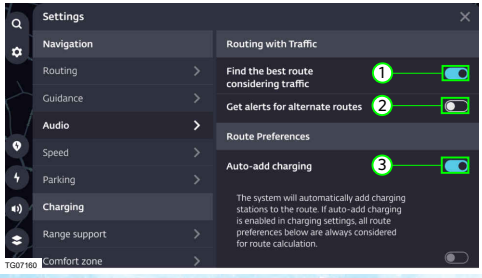
"Routing with Traffic" feature allows to find the best route option considering the traffic conditions. Traffic conditions on roads other than the highways, for instance secondary roads and urban streets, are also displayed. Also, navigation system offers alternative routes during the guidance with better traffic conditions or arrival times.

Activating/deactivating routing with traffic

When the Go application is active, routing with traffic feature can be activated/deactivated.

1. Go to:

   Main Screen → Go Application → Settings → Navigation → Routing → Routing with Traffic



2. Tap on the button (1) to activate or deactivate the routing with traffic feature.

Additionally, you can get alerts for alternative routes.

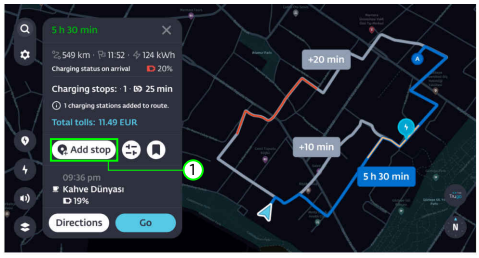
- Tap on the button (2) to activate or deactivate the feature.

Alternative routes are displayed on the main screen during the active route guidance. Any alternative route can be selected and navigation system reroutes according to the choice of the user.

- Tap on the button (3) to activate or deactivate the auto-add charging feature.

6.8.6.5 Add stops

You can enter additional destinations during active route guidance. More than 10 stops can be entered for one trip.



TG07161

To add an additional stop:

1. On the active route guidance, tap on the ETA card.
2. Tap on the "Add Stop" button (1). Search bar appears.
3. Tap on the "Search here" and enter new address/POI/location.
4. Select the destination from search results and tap on the "Add Stop."

   or

   Replace the current destination by tapping on the "Reroute" button.

Arriving at a way point

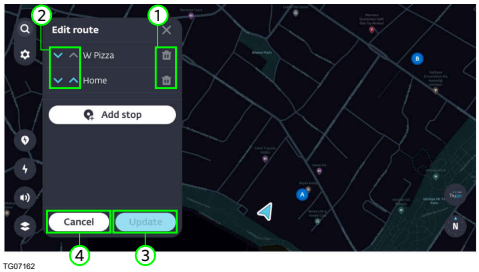
When approaching a way point, the system will display a destination arrival view on radar with a flag icon and the guidance widget shows "You have reached your way point." To continue to the next destination, tap on the "Close" button on the display.

If the vehicle passes the way point or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this way point. At the same time, it will show the next way point address so the current way point can be skipped and active route guidance can resume to the next way point or destination.

Editing way point

When way points are added during active route guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or reordered.

1. Tap on the "Edit Route" button.



TG07162

2. Edit the route by using the buttons (1) and (2).
3. Tap on the button (3) or (4) to update or cancel the changes done on active route guidance.

6.8.6.6 Map

Road network attributes are streamed over cloud for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Point of Interests (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas. Country-specific map content can be downloaded from the "Settings" menu.

Map orientation

Tap on the map orientation button on the map to change the map orientation.

The following orientations are available:

- 3D map view
- 2D map view
- North-up view
- 2D map entire route overview

Map gestures

Use the following gestures on the map to adjust the map scale and display options:

- Pinch to zoom in or out
- Pan the map

6.8.6.7 Map settings

Several navigation settings can be changed using the main screen as per the user preference.

Go to:

Main Screen → Go Application → Settings

Following settings can be updated under the settings menu:

- Navigation
  - Routing
  - Guidance
  - Audio
  - Speed
  - Parking
- Charging
  - Range Support
  - Comfort Zone
  - Connector Type and Speed
  - Provider
- Map
  - Map Display
  - Offline Maps
- General
  - Language
  - Units
  - Appearance
  - OSS Notices
  - About
  - Data Privacy

6.8.7 Screen Saver

You can select the screen saver widget to display the screen saver on the main screen. (6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen)

The screen saver widget layout cannot be changed.

The below are the available screen savers:

- Clock and Date:

  It displays analog or digital clock with date on the main screen.
- Weather:

  It displays weather information with respect to the current vehicle location.
- Graphic (Togg 1 or Togg 2):

  It displays static graphic depending upon selection.

Configuring the screen saver widget:

When the screen saver widget is selected on the main screen,

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page

2. Tap on the screen saver widget.
3. Choose the desired screen saver.

6.8.8 Cluster Duplicate

Cluster duplicate displays some of the driver's screen information on the main screen. (6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen)

The following information can be displayed in this widget.

- Cluster information:

  It displays the recuperation level, power meter, and battery State of Charge.
- G-force meter:

  It displays the magnitude of the forces that are applied to the vehicle occupants in longitudinal and transverse directions while driving.
- Speed meter:

  It displays the current vehicle speed.
- Outside temperature:

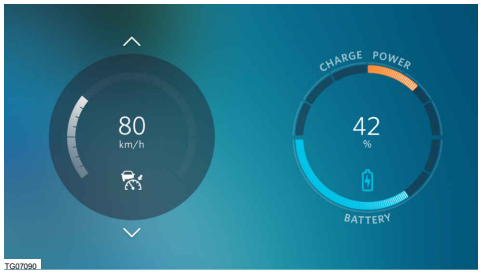
  It displays the outside air temperature.
- Inclinometer:

  It displays the roll (lateral inclination) and pitch (longitudinal inclination) values of the vehicle in degree (°).
- Compass:

  It displays the direction of vehicle travel with reference to the true north.

  Eight different directions are shown: N (north), NE (north-east), E (east), SE (south-east), S (south), SW (south-west), W (west) and NW (north-west).

Example of cluster duplicate widget:



Different configuration with cluster information can be selected to display on the cluster duplicate widget.

Configuring the cluster duplicate widget:

When the cluster duplicate widget is selected on the main screen,

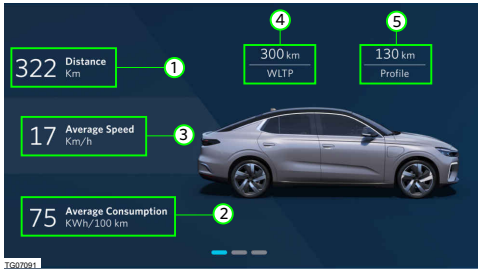
1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page

2. Tap on the cluster duplicate widget.
3. Select the desired configuration to display with cluster information.

6.8.9 Journey Data

Journey data widget displays the information about the energy statistics and driving style. (6.4.3 Adding a Widget to the Main Screen)



1. Driven distance
2. Average consumption
3. Average driving speed
4. Maximum WLTP driving range
5. Profile specific driving range

Depending upon the user selection the journey data can be displayed since:

- Last charging:

  Displays energy statistics since last charging.

- Current drive:

  Displays energy statistics for current drive.

- My journey:

  Displays energy statistics for specific journey or route.

The journey data can be displayed in the form of numbers or graph depending upon user selection.

Configuring the journey data widget:

When the journey data widget is selected on the main screen,

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page

2. Tap on the journey data widget.
3. Choose the desired view (Number or Graph) and/or the energy statistics (Last charge or Current Drive or My Journey).

6.8.10 Tru.Store

Tru.Store helps to find and install or uninstall apps on the vehicle system. It provides collection of approved apps (Third-party apps) to use on the vehicle system.

App Categories:

- Control display only:

  These apps can only be used on the control display.

- Control display app with widgets:

  These apps use the control display but also have a widget that can be opened on the main screen. But opening or closing these apps on the control display does not affect main screen behavior e.g. Journey data, Media.

- Main screen only:

  These apps can only be opened on the main screen e.g. Third-party apps (YouTube).

- Dual screen:

  These apps use both the main screen and control display at the same time when opened. When the app is closed on the control display it also disappears from the main screen e.g., Phonebook.

- Dual screen apps with widgets:

  These apps use both the main screen and control display at the same time when opened and have widgets e.g., Navigation (Go).

6.9 Software Updates

6.9.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of system malfunction or limited functionality of some features including safety systems. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle when the software is being installed.

INFORMATION

The software installation time is dependent on the content of the update and connection quality.

INFORMATION

Software updates may be required from time to time for the electronic and electromechanical parts of the Smart Device and on-board applications. It is mandatory to have these software updates done within the periods specified by Togg in order to ensure your Smart Device having high-level technological hardware keeps providing the functions, benefit and comfort you expect from it. Mandatory updates to the standard hardware of smart device will be provided free of charge while the updates related to 3rd Party Applications and hardware that is subject to any subscription may require a specific payment.

Togg updates your vehicle's software wirelessly and constantly provides new features. This gives you continued access to new features and improvements.

The system provides notification on the driver's screen when a software update is available.

It is recommended to install the new software update as soon as it becomes available to avoid the risk that may be associated with the old software. In the event of problems with the software update, contact Togg customer support for assistance. Some features are available by default and free of charge, while others may require a purchase or subscription.

Requirements to install updated software

The below-listed requirements must be fulfilled to install the software successfully.

- Active internet connection
- Electric parking brake is engaged
- The cluster has no active error telltales or warnings
- High-Voltage battery SoC is min 20%

INFORMATION

If an LTE connection is used, ensure that the LTE subscription has a sufficient data download limit to download the update file, which may be up to 4GB in some cases.

Checking software update

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → System Information → Software Update

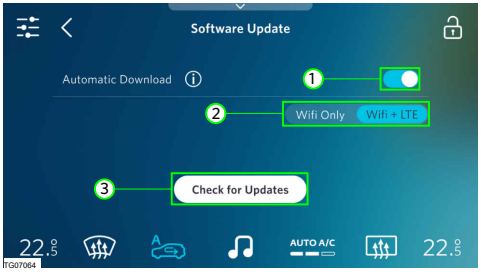
2. Tap on "Check for Updates." The available update is displayed on the control display.

6.9.2 Software Update Settings

The software update settings can be changed using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → System Information → Software Update



Software download preference

A. Manual download

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → System Information → Software Update

2. Tap on the button (3) to check for updates. The available update is displayed on the control display.
3. Select the desired option "Download/Later" to download the software manually.

B. Automatic download

The software updates are automatically downloaded in the background when the function is active.

- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the automatic download function.
- Tap on the button (2) to set the desired network preference for downloading the software, when automatic download is active.

INFORMATION

- ***Downloading will be interrupted if the vehicle is turned Off and is resumed automatically once the vehicle is operational or an internet connection is established.***
- ***If the software download is failed, tap on the "Restart Download" button to download the software again.***

Installing the software update

INFORMATION

- ***Always read the software release notes before starting the installation process so that you know how the vehicle and its functions are affected.***
- ***While software installation, all vehicle functions will be suspended, which may include the lights and door locks. However, the mechanical key can still be used. The anti-theft alarm may not be available during installation. Bear this in mind when scheduling the update.***
- ***Do not start software installation when the vehicle is connected to DC fast charger.***
- ***During software installation, plugging in the charging cable is not recommended. The vehicle will not charge during the software installation.***

The installation of the software update may seldom take up to 150 minutes. Before starting installation, make sure that the vehicle is charged to at least 35%. When the software is completely downloaded, a "Ready for installation" notification will pop up in the notification panel.

During and after the software installation, the vehicle's electronic systems may restart one or multiple times. Successful software installation is displayed on the control display. The vehicle can be operated normally after successful software installation.

6.9.3 Failed Software Update

In rare cases, an error can occur during the installation. If software installation is failed, an error message "Update Failed" will be displayed on the control display.

The system automatically attempts to restore the previous version. If it is not possible to restore previous version, control units may no longer function or may not function correctly in the event of a critical installation error. Do not use the vehicle. . It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service for further assistance as they have necessary tools.

6.9.4 Checking Software Release Notes

Togg strongly recommends that all users read the release notes for every software update. They can contain important information about your vehicle, including safety information or new operating instructions. Release notes can be viewed after downloading and before installing the software update.

6.9.5 Performing Software Reset

A software reset function can be used to reset all ECUs (Electronic Control Units) in the vehicle. The software reset can only be performed when the vehicle is in standby or accessory mode.

Purpose of software reset

- Clear temporary errors or fault codes
- Restore malfunctioning systems
- Apply software updates or recalibration
- Fix communication glitches between modules

When to perform a software reset

Software reset may need to perform in below conditions.

- After repairs or diagnostics
- When warning lights stay on without reason
- Following software/firmware updates
- If systems freeze or behave oddly
- After disconnecting the battery

To perform a software reset:

1. Go to:

   Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → System Information → More

2. Tap on the software reset button. The vehicle will shut down.

3. Press the Start/Stop button or the unlock button on the remote key to wake up the vehicle.

A software reset function can be used to reset all ECUs (Electronic Control Units) in the vehicle. The software reset can only be performed when the vehicle is in standby or accessory mode.

6.10 Cameras

6.10.1 External Cameras

6.10.1.1 Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment and configuration, several external cameras are available in the vehicle. These cameras support various driver assistance features.

6.10.1.2 Front surround view camera (if equipped)

For vehicles equipped with the surround view feature, a camera is provided on the shield assembly. It is used to provide visual information when parking and maneuvering the vehicle.

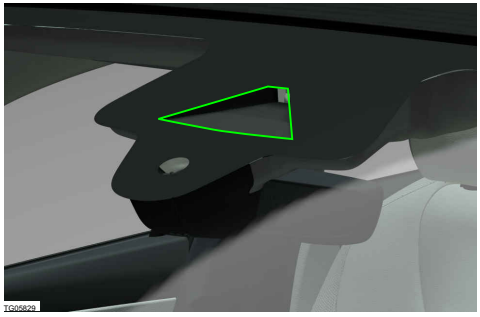
6.10.1.3 Surround view camera on the mirror (if equipped)

For vehicles equipped with the surround view feature, a camera is provided on both outside mirrors.

6.10.1.4 Rearview camera (if equipped)

The rearview camera is located on the rear bumper. It is used to provide information when parking and maneuvering the vehicle in reverse.

6.10.1.5 Front smart camera



The front smart camera is located behind the windshield. The front smart camera provides information to various driver assistance features.

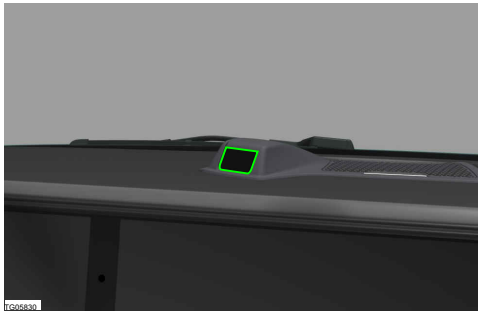
6.10.2 Internal Cameras

6.10.2.1 In cabin camera (if equipped)

The in cabin camera is mounted on the overhead console. Using the Trumore app, occupants can capture both pictures and videos.

The in cabin camera also enables entertainment functions like taking selfies and making video calls to share experiences while traveling.

6.10.2.2 Driver infrared camera



The driver infrared camera monitors the alertness and condition of the driver. It can detect distraction, drowsiness, and microsleeps and can alert the driver in time. For more information on driver monitoring system, 4.8.1.3 Driver Monitoring System .

6.10.3 Limitations of the Cameras

In the following situations, the camera may not work as intended:

- When the camera view is obstructed by other objects.
- In extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain or strong winds.
- In the dark surroundings.
- If the camera lens is damaged.
- When the camera lens is blocked by dirt, dust, or mud.

6.11 Trumore App

6.11.1 Overview

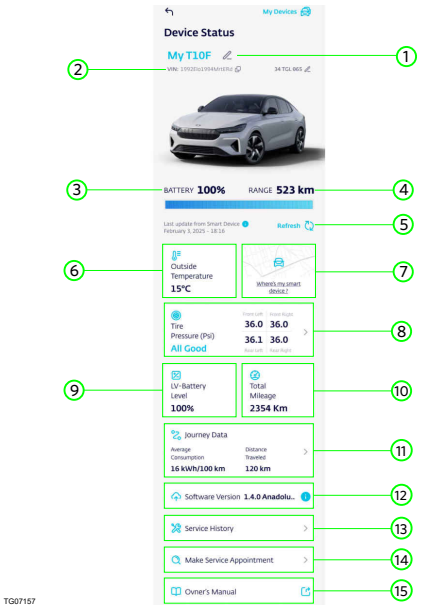
Trumore app allows to use some of the smart device settings and features by using smartphone.

6.11.2 Checking Device Information

To check the device information:

Go to:

Trumore App → My Smart Device



TG07157

1. Device Name
2. VIN Number
3. High-voltage battery State of Charge
4. Range
5. Refresh Information Page
6. Outside Air Temperature
7. Last Park Location
8. Tire Pressure
9. Low Voltage Battery Level
10. Total Mileage
11. Journey Data
12. Software Version Information
13. Service History
14. Make Service Appointment
15. Owner's Manual

Assigning new name:

You can assign personalized name to your smart device.

1. Go to:

   Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings

2. Tap on the edit button and update the name.

Changing measurement units:

1. Go to:

   Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings

2. Set the desired measurement units.

Notifications settings:

You can customize the Trumore app notifications for high-voltage battery level, tire pressure, and drivable range.

1. Go to:

   Trumore App → My Smart Device → Device Information → Settings

2. Set the desired notification setting.

7 Operations & Controls

7.1 Exterior Lighting

7.1.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***The risk of accident increases if high beam is used on the approaching vehicle as it can cause glare for other drivers. Only use high beam or high beam flash when it is safe to use or traffic condition allows.***
- ***There is a risk of an accident if the low beam lights are switched Off automatically in poor visibility. The system may not detect the fog. Always ensure that the automatic light function is deactivated when driving in poor visibility situations, such as fog, snow or spray.***
- ***Never look too closely at the light beam of headlamp, there is a risk of serious eye injury.***

INFORMATION

Condensation may form temporarily on the inside of the lenses of exterior lights, such as headlights or taillights. This is normal and the lights are designed to withstand moisture. Normally, condensation will dissipate after the lights have been used for a short time.

7.1.2 Automatic Light

When the automatic light function is activated, the low beam headlight will be automatically turned On or Off depending on ambient brightness.

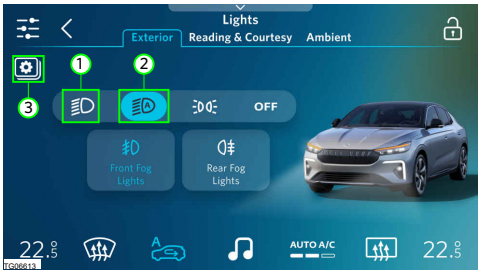
The automatic light function helps when driving in a tunnel, snow or rain.

Activating/Deactivating automatic light

The automatic lights can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls →Lights → Exterior



1. Manual low beam mode
2. Automatic light mode
3. Exterior light settings

- Tap on the automatic light mode button (2) to activate or deactivate the function.

If the low beam is turned On manually using the manual low beam mode button (1), the automatic light function will be deactivated.

INFORMATION

If activated, the automatic light function can only be used when the vehicle is turned On (High-voltage activated).

Automatic light limitations

The system may not be able to detect fog or hazy weather. It is the driver's responsibility to turn On the low beam manually.

7.1.3 Position Light

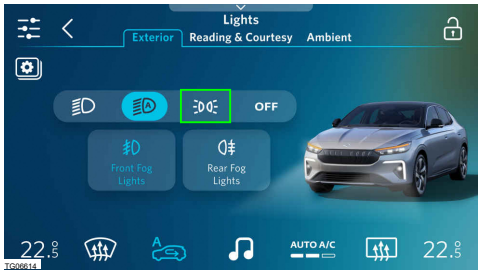
Position lights help other road users to see if your vehicle is stopped or parked. When the position lights are On, the license plate light will be activated.

Position lights are activated automatically when the vehicle is turned Off (High-voltage is deactivated).

It can be activated/deactivated manually using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls →Lights → Exterior



- Tap on the manual position light mode button.

INFORMATION

The position lights cannot be used when the vehicle is turned On (High-voltage activated).

7.1.4 Switching Exterior Lights Completely Off

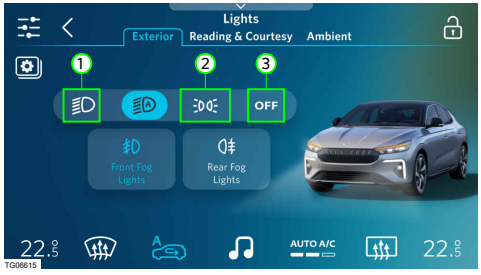
The Exterior Light Off function operates only when the vehicle is in accessory mode.

An acoustic warning will alert the driver in the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is turned Off and exterior lights are still On.
- If the driver door is opened and position lights are active.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls →Lights → Exterior



- Tap on the manual low beam button (1) to turn Off the low beam light.
- Tap on the position light button (2) to turn Off the position light manually.
- Tap on the button (3) to turn Off all exterior lights.

INFORMATION

The button will not work in Drive or Awake modes

7.1.5 All Lights Off After Locking in Accessory

All exterior lights can be turned off using this feature, e.g., when the vehicle is being charged.

Operating requirements:

- The vehicle is in accessory mode.
- All doors are locked.

INFORMATION

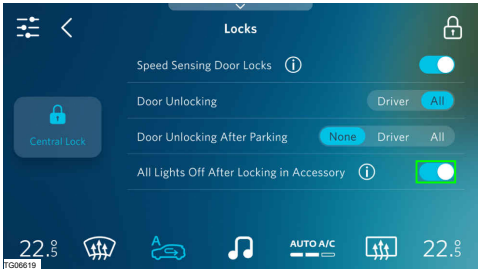
The exterior lights will be turned On if any of the doors are unlocked or opened.

Activating/deactivating the all lights off after locking in accessory

The feature can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Locks



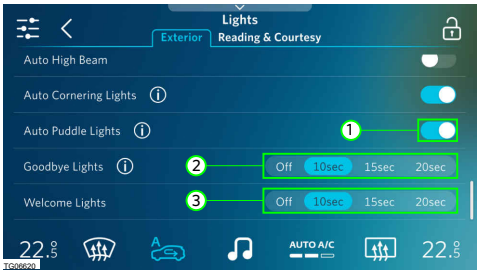
- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the all lights off after locking in accessory feature.

7.1.6 Light Scenario

The light scenario settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings



Welcome Light

When unlocking the vehicle, the exterior lights will turn On for a limited period of time to allow you to get in the vehicle.

Activating/Deactivating the welcome light

- To deactivate, select the Off button (3).
- The activation time can be adjusted by selecting the desired time span 10, 15 or 20 seconds (3).

Goodbye Lights

After exiting and locking the vehicle, the exterior lights will remain turned On for a limited period of time to allow you to get out of the vehicle.

- To deactivate, select the Off button (2).
- The activation time can be adjusted by selecting the desired time span 10, 15 or 20 seconds (2).

Auto puddle lights (if equipped)

When any of the front door is opened, the puddle lights will automatically turn On.

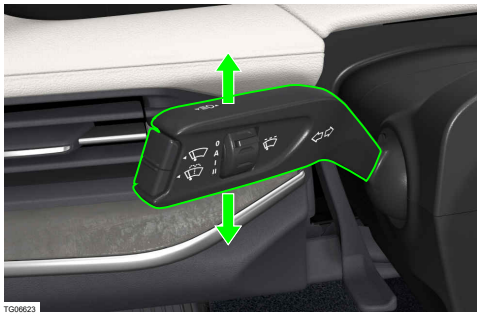
- Tap on the button (1) to activate/deactivate the auto puddle light.

7.1.7 Daytime Running Light

Daytime running light will automatically turn On as the vehicle is turned On and is in a ready to drive condition.

It increases the visibility of your vehicle to other road users.

7.1.8 Direction Indicator



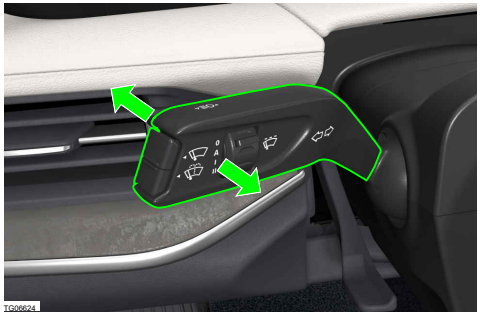
The direction indicators can be activated using the left lever on the steering wheel.

1. Push the lever down to activate the left side direction indicator.
2. Push the lever up to activate the right side direction indicator.

Comfort direction indication

With the comfort direction indication function, the lever needs to be touched only once for the direction indicator to flash three times. It increases safety and convenience while changing lanes or driving on motorways.

7.1.9 Using High Beam and Flash High Beam



When the headlamps are turned On:

1. Push the left lever forward to switch On the high beam.
2. Pull the left lever backward (towards you) to switch Off the high beam.
3. Slightly pull the left lever towards you and release it to flash the headlamps.

7.1.10 High Beam Light Assist (HLA)

When the automatic light function is active, the system automatically switches the headlamp setting to a low beam when it detects the vehicle ahead. The system will turn On the high beam as the traffic condition allows it to do. This feature helps to increase safer driving during nighttime.

This function works with the help of a front smart camera mounted on the windshield by detecting the light from the oncoming and leading vehicles.

The high beam assist function is available at a vehicle speed above 40 km/h.

The following icons appear on the driver's display to show the current state of the headlights.

Display Icon

Icon	Description
	High beam light assist activated but recommended "Off" or High beam light assist is not activated (Icon is steady)
	High beam assist active and Off (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist error (Icon is steady)
	High beam light assist is activated and recommended On (Icon is steady)
	Manual high beam activated (Icon is steady)

⚠ WARNING

High beam assist is an assistance function. It does not relieve the driver from the responsibility to use the high or low beam. Always switch between high or low beam when traffic situations or weather conditions require it.

Using the high beam light assist

The function can be used:

With the left lever

Requirement:

Automatic light mode is activated.

1. To enable, pull the left lever for 1.5 seconds.
2. To activate, push the left lever forward.

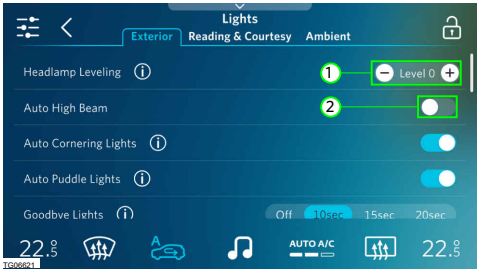
With the control display

Requirement:

Automatic light mode is activated.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings



To enable the high beam light assist function, tap on the auto high beam button (2).

2. To activate, push the left lever forward.

Adjusting the headlight angle level

The headlight angle level can be adjusted in 4 levels as per the driver's seating position to allow better visibility.

- Tap on the "+" or "-" button (1) to adjust the headlight angle level.

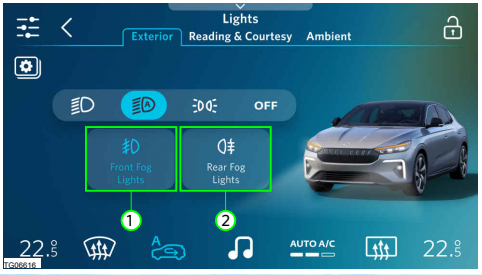
7.1.11 Fog Light

7.1.11.1 Overview

The fog lights can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings



1. Front Fog Lights
2. Rear Fog Lights

7.1.11.2 Front fog light

The vehicle is equipped with LED fog lights at the front to provide maximum illumination when visibility conditions are poor, such as in rain or fog.

To use the fog light, the vehicle must be turned On (High-voltage activated).

Activating/Deactivating the front fog light

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior

- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the front fog lights.

7.1.11.3 Cornering lights

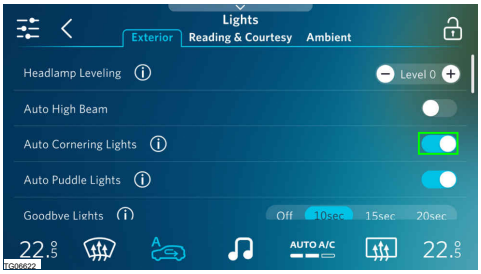
The cornering light function activates the fog light of the corresponding side in which the steering wheel is turned or the direction indicator is activated. This function helps to illuminate the area to the side of the vehicle to increase visibility in dark or poor light conditions.

The function is active up to the vehicle speed of 40 km/h.

The cornering light function can be activated/ deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior → Settings



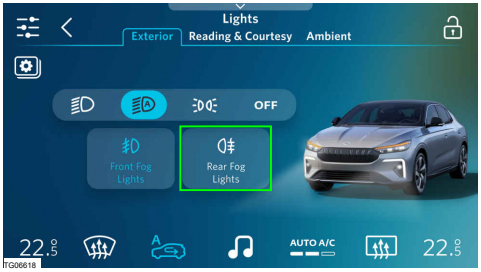
- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the auto cornering lights

7.1.11.4 Rear fog light

The vehicle is equipped with LED fog light at the rear on the left side, which increases the visibility of your vehicle to other road users in poor visibility conditions, such as in rain or fog.

Activating/Deactivating the rear fog light

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Exterior



- Tap on the button to activate/deactivate the rear fog lights.

7.1.11.5 Reverse light

When the gear selector is in the "R" position, the reverse lights will be turned On to alert other road users. As the vehicle starts to move forward or the gear selector is shifted to a position other than "R", the lights will turn Off.

7.1.12 Parking Light

The parking light function allows activation of the one side lights when the vehicle is parked. This helps other road users see that the vehicle is stopped.

Activating the parking light

1. Turn Off the vehicle.

2. Push the left lever up or down to activate the parking light on right or left side.

Deactivating the parking light

- Push the left lever to its normal position.

INFORMATION

Do not keep the parking lights On for a long period of time as it may drain the vehicle low-voltage battery.

7.1.13 Brake Light

The brake lights will be activated when the driver applies the brake, which helps to warn the following vehicle.

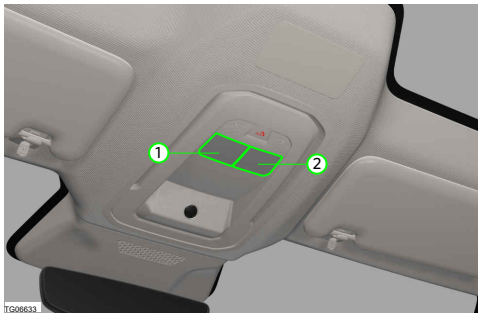
Adaptive brake light

The adaptive brake light is activated in the event of hard braking at high speeds to alert the vehicle behind. The function flashes the brake lights. Depending on the braking severity, hazard warning lights are also activated. The normal brightness is resumed as the driver releases the brake pedal.

7.2 Interior Lighting

7.2.1 Reading Light

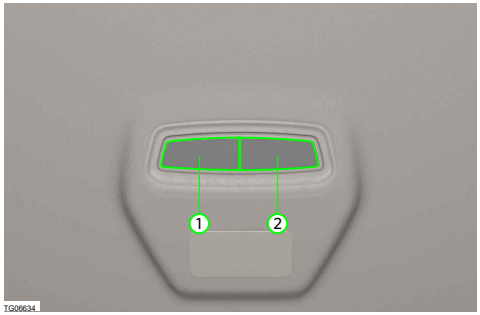
7.2.1.1 Reading light front



Switching front reading light On/Off

- Press the lens button (1) for the left reading.
- Press the lens button (2) for the right reading.

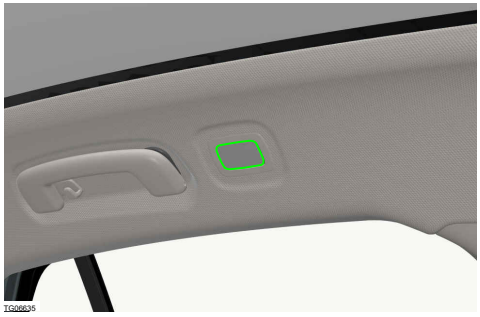
7.2.1.2 Reading light rear (if equipped)



Switching rear reading light On/Off

- Press the lens button (1) for the left reading.
- Press the lens button (2) for the right reading.

7.2.1.3 Reading light rear for panoroof (if equipped)



Switching rear reading light On/Off

- Press the lens button above the relevant door.

7.2.2 Adjusting the Reading Light Settings

The reading light settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Reading & Courtesy

- Tap on the desired individual button (4) to switch On/Off the desire reading light.
- Tap on the button (2) to turn Off all the reading/ courtesy/footwell lights and ambient lights.
- Tap on the button (3) to activate/deactivate the auto door function.

  It activates courtesy lights and footwell lights when the vehicle door is opened.

Adjusting the brightness:

The brightness of the reading lights can be adjusted with following ways.

Using the on the control display:

- Tap on the desired individual button (4) to select the light and adjust the brightness using the slider (1).

Or

Using the lens button on individual lights (7.2.1 Reading Light):

- Long press the lens button on light to adjust the brightness.

INFORMATION

Reading light brightness can only be adjusted when the reading light is turned On.

7.2.3 Courtesy Light (if equipped)

The courtesy lights are provided for the passenger's convenience. The interior light at the front and rear and footwell lights at the front will switch On automatically.

It will switch On under the following conditions:

- When auto door function is active and the door is opened.
- When auto door function is active and the vehicle is turned Off.

It will switch Off under the following conditions:

- When auto door function is active and the vehicle is turned On.
- When auto door function is active and all doors are closed.

7.2.4 Trunk Light

Trunk lights are provided to illuminate the trunk storage area. The trunk light will switch On when the tailgate is opened.

7.2.5 Glove Box Light

Glove box lights are provided to illuminate the glove box storage area. The light will switch On when the glove box is opened.

7.2.6 Ambient Lighting (if equipped)

7.2.6.1 Overview

Ambient lights are provided on the door trims and overhead console and illuminates with your choice of color.

The ambient lights will switch On when the vehicle is unlocked or the vehicle is in "Accessory" mode and will switch Off when the vehicle is locked or the vehicle is in "Standby" mode.

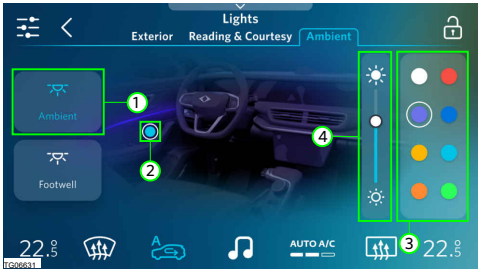
If the ambient light is turned Off using the control display, it will not switch On when the vehicle is unlocked.

7.2.6.2 Adjusting the ambient light settings

The color and brightness of the ambient can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Ambient



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the ambient light.
- Adjusting the color and brightness:

1. Tap on the button (2) to enable the color palette and brightness adjuster.
2. Set the desired color of ambient light using the color palette (3).
3. Adjust the ambient light brightness using the slider (4).

INFORMATION

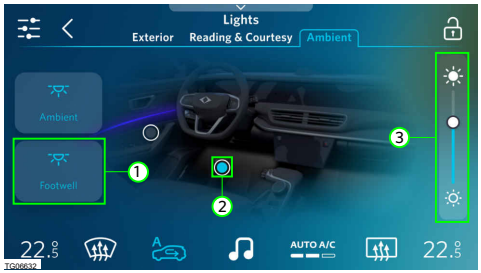
Ambient lighting brightness and color can only be adjusted when the ambient lighting is turned On.

7.2.6.3 Adjusting the footwell light settings

The footwell lights settings can be adjusted using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Lights → Ambient



- Tap on the button (1) to turn On/Off the footwell lights.
- Tap on the button (2) to enable the brightness adjuster and adjust the footwell light brightness using the slider (3).

INFORMATION

The brightness of the footwell lights can only be adjusted when the footwell lights are turned On.

7.3 Seats

7.3.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of serious injury or accident while adjusting the driver's seat when a vehicle is in motion. The seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose vehicle control. Always adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary.***
- ***There is a risk of becoming trapped when adjusting the seats. Always keep the seat movement area free while adjusting the seats.***
- ***Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. There is a risk of children becoming trapped if they adjust the seats.***
- ***After adjusting a manual seat, always check that it is locked by shifting your weight to the front and back. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.***
- ***Do not install seat protective covers unless they are specifically approved for use in your vehicle. Unapproved seat protective covers may block airbag deployment.***
- ***There is a risk of serious injury by sliding under the lap portion of the seat belt in the event of an accident if aftermarket seat pads and/or seat covers are used. Aftermarket seat pads or seat covers reduce friction between the seat and the passenger. Never use aftermarket seat pads and/ seat covers.***
- ***Never store any objects under the front seats. Loose objects may slide and can become trapped in the brake pedal or accelerator pedal limiting their functions. There is a risk of accident or losing vehicle control.***
- ***There is a risk of serious injury. Do not adjust the backrest angle too far back. Risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident or braking maneuvers increases. Adjust the backrest as upright as possible.***
- ***There is a risk of injury to the hands by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism when picking the small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and center console. Carefully pick the small objects.***
- ***There is a risk of becoming trapped when adjusting or removing the headrest. Always keep the headrest movement area free while adjusting the headrest.***
- ***There is a risk of serious injury in the event of an accident if the headrest is fitted or adjusted incorrectly. Always make sure that the headrests are fitted correctly.***
- ***Always adjust the seat when you are not wearing the seat belt. There is a risk of exerting pressure on your abdomen by the seat belt if the seat cushion is moved forward.***

- ***Never transport passengers in the trunk storage. Every passenger must be secured with the safety belts in the vehicle.***
- ***Never install or cover the electrical controls with seat protective covers.***
- ***There is a risk of injury to the passenger in the event of an accident or maneuvers if the luggage is stored higher than the rear seat backrest height. Always stow and secure large and heavy objects with suitable straps at the tie bracket hook.***
- ***To have a maximum protective effect from the airbags, always use and position the seat belt correctly.***

7.3.2 Correct Seating Position

Correct seating position ensures safe and fatigue-free driving.

Make sure to adjust the driver's seat to meet individual requirements.

Ensure following points:

1. Your legs are not fully extended and pedals are easily accessible and can be completely pressed.
2. There is at least a 25 cm distance between your upper body and the steering wheel.
3. Your thighs are supported by the seat surface.
4. Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
5. The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it.
6. Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly.
7. Adjust the headrest such that the back of your head is supported at eye level by the center of the headrest.
8. You have a clear view of the driver's display and traffic conditions.

7.3.3 Adjusting Seat

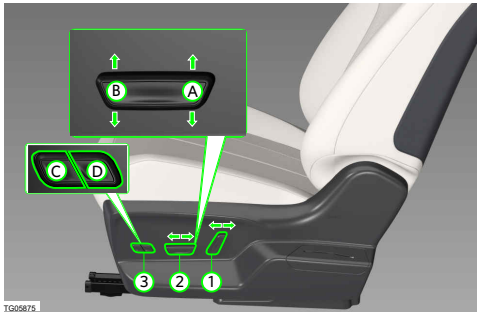
7.3.3.1 Overview

The front seats can be adjusted as per the desired seating position. Always adapt the correct seating position by adjusting the seat for a fatigue-free and comfortable drive.

7.3.3.2 Manual seats (if equipped)

- To adjust the backrest angle, lean slightly forward and operate the recliner knob (1). Adjust the backrest angle to the desired position.
- To adjust the seat height, move the lever (2) up or down until the seat is at the desired seat height.
- To adjust the longitudinal seat position, lift the lever (3) and slide the front seat to the desired position. Make sure the seat is engaged.

7.3.3.3 Electric seats (if equipped)



- To adjust the seat backrest angle, press the switch (1) forward or backward.
- To adjust the seat height, press the switch (2) up or down at location (A).
- To adjust the seat cushion inclination, press the switch (2) up or down at location (B).
- To adjust the back and forth seat position, press the switch (2) forward or backward.
- To adjust the lumbar support as per the desired position, push the switch (3) at (C) and (D) location.

INFORMATION

The front passenger seat controls are arranged in a way that mirrors the driver seat controls. The seat cushion inclination and the lumbar support adjustments are only possible for driver's seat.

7.3.4 Headrest Adjustment

7.3.4.1 Overview

The vehicle is equipped with a headrest for each seat. The headrest can be adjusted to the desired position as per the driver's seating position. Adjust the headrest so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head but not lower than eye level. Place the back of your head close to the headrest. Always make sure to adapt the correct seating position.

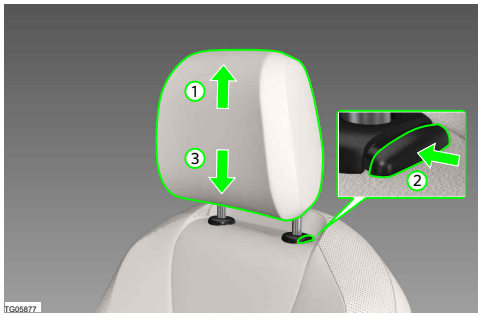
⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of component damage if the front seat with the headrest raised is reclined towards the front. It may come in contact with the headliner or sunvisor.

INFORMATION

When using a forward-facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the headrest from that seat.

7.3.4.2 Front headrest

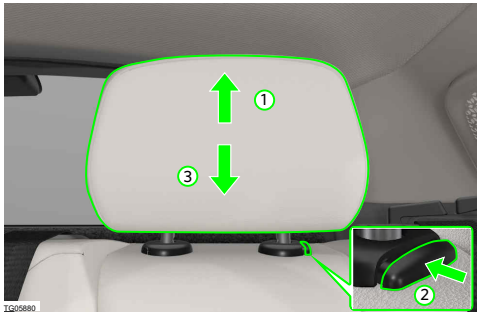


1. To raise the height of the headrest:

   Pull the headrest upward (1) to the desired position. The headrest can be felt to click into position.
2. To lower the height:

   Press the button (2) and push the headrest downward (3).

7.3.4.3 Rear headrest



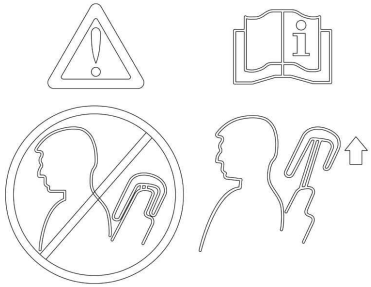
1. To raise the height of the headrest:

   Pull the headrest upward (1) to the desired position. The headrest can be felt to click into position.
2. To lower the height:

   Press the button (2) and push the headrest downward (3).

⚠ ATTENTION

Make sure to raise the rear headrest when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger. The rear seat headrest must not be used in the lowest position.



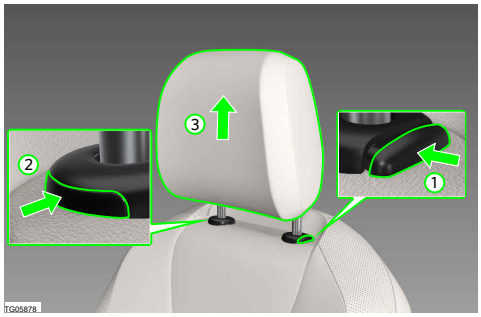
7.3.4.4 Removing the headrest

⚠ WARNING

Do not swap the headrests while reinstalling. Headrests are specifically designed to fit in their respective backrest. Correct fitting is not guaranteed if installed at other locations. There is a risk of serious injury if the headrests are not fitted correctly.

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of material damage while removing the headrest. Be careful not to damage the vehicle interior components.



1. Adjust the seat backrest if necessary to remove the headrest.
2. Raise the headrest all the way up.
3. Press and hold both the buttons (1) and (2) and pull out (3) the headrest.

7.3.4.5 Installing the headrest

Align the headrest stem correctly against the backrest hole and insert the headrest into the corresponding seat backrest and press it down to fit in the proper position.

7.3.5 Rear Seats

7.3.5.1 Folding rear seat backrest

The rear seat backrest is split into two sections. Each section can be folded forward individually to increase trunk storage capacity.

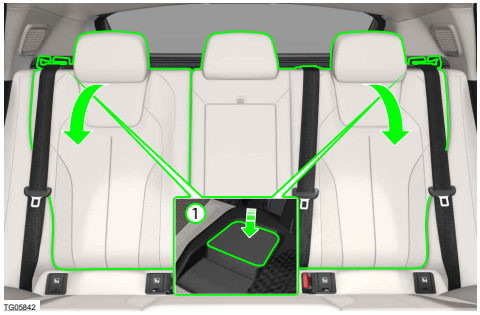
⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of entrapment when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the headrest is kept clear.***
- ***There is a risk of injury or entrapment. Do not fold the seat backrest if the seat belt is fastened.***
- ***Always ensure backrest is correctly locked to prevent objects from sliding forward during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.***

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the striker protrudes into the interior. There is a risk of material damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, watch out for the protruding striker and keep this area clear.***
- ***The armrest in the center seat must be raised before the rear seat backrest is folded down.***
- ***Always make sure that the seat belt is positioned correctly after folding up the seat backrest.***

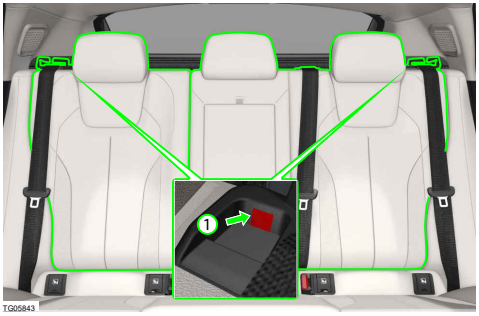
7.3.5.2 Folding down the backrest



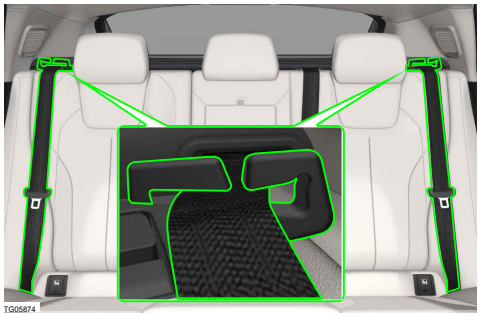
1. Push the headrest down.
2. Push the button (1) on left or right backrest and pull forward the required backrest to fold down.

7.3.5.3 Folding up the backrest

1. Move the backrest upward/rearward.
2. Press the backrest until it locks into position. Make sure that the red label on the button (1) is not visible.



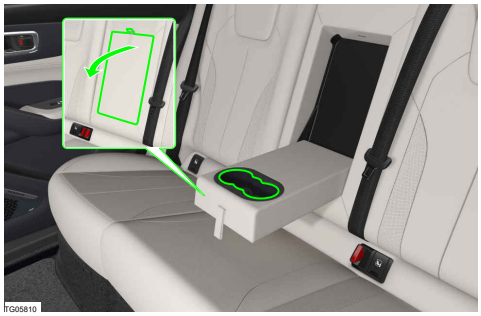
3. Position the lateral seat belts through the belt guide.



4. Adjust the headrest as required.

7.3.5.4 Rear armrest with cupholder (if equipped)

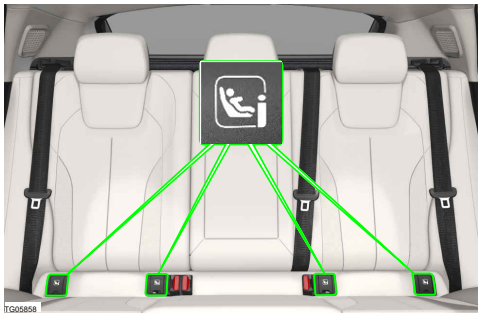
Two cup holders are available at the rear.



- Open the rear armrest to use the rear cup holder.

7.3.5.5 Attachment points for child restraint system on rear seats

i-Size mounts



Top-tether anchorage

For more information related to attachment points for child restraint system on rear seats, 2.3.2.2 Attachment points for Child Restraint System .

7.3.6 Seat Heating (if equipped)

7.3.6.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

- ***Do not place heavy objects on the seats if the seat heating function is turned On.***
- ***Do not use the seat heating function if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly before activating the function.***
- ***If the seat cover is soaked through, this can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of burns. Never sit on the seat while wearing damp or wet clothing. Make sure the seat surface is dry before using the seat heating function.***
- ***Do not place any damp or wet objects and clothing on the seat. There is a risk of short circuit.***
- ***For persons with sensitive skin prolong use of seat heating function is not recommended.***
- ***There is a risk of skin burn for persons with disability to sense heat or taking medical treatments.***
- ***Do not use the insulating material to cover the seats, there is a risk of system overheating.***
- ***Do not use seat heating function,***
  - ***If the seat backrest is folded.***
  - ***If child seats are installed.***
- ***To avoid burns resulting from prolonged use, individuals who have peripheral neuropathy, or whose capacity to feel pain is limited because of diabetes, age, neurological injury, or some other condition, should exercise caution when using the climate control system and seat heaters.***

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of damage to the seat heating element, do not kneel on the seat or place sharp objects on the seat or spill liquid on the seat

The seat heating feature is only available when the vehicle is turned On. Seat heating will be turned Off automatically if the interior temperature is high.

The seat heating level for front and rear row seats can be adjusted using the control display. It also possible to adjust the rear seat heating level using the buttons below the rear air vent.

7.3.6.2 Front row seat

The heating level for the front row can be adjusted in 3 levels using the seat heating button. The indicator light on the seat heating button indicates the current level.

No indicator light on the seat heating button indicates seat heating is Off for the corresponding seat.

To adjust heating level for front seat:

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

- Tap on the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the driver or front passenger seat.

7.3.6.3 Rear row seat (if equipped)

The heating level for the rear row can be adjusted in 2 levels using the seat heating button. The indicator light on the seat heating button indicates the current level.

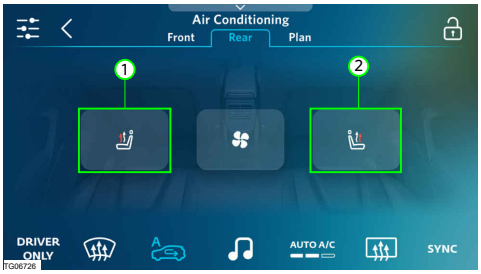
No indicator light on the seat heating button indicates seat heating is Off for the corresponding seat.

The rear row seat heating can be adjusted using the control display or the buttons on the rear AC vent.

To adjust heating level for rear seat using the control display,

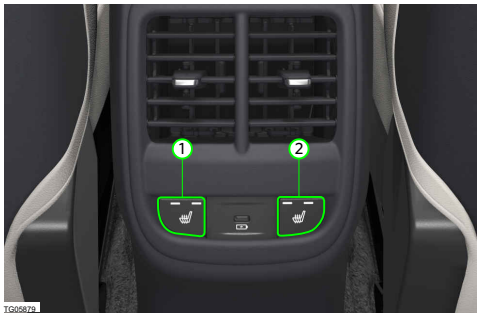
Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Rear



- Tap on the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the left or right seat.

To adjust heating level for rear seat using the buttons below the rear air vent,



- Press the (1) or (2) seat heating button to adjust the heating level of the left or right seat.

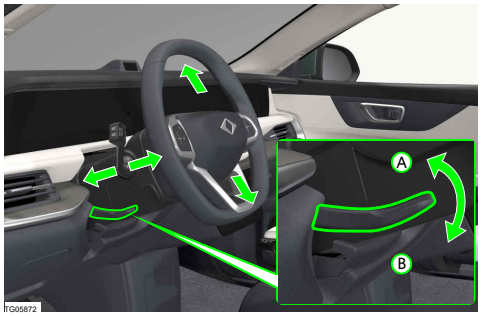
7.4 Steering Wheel Controls

7.4.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of losing vehicle control if the steering wheel is adjusted when the vehicle is in motion. Always adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary.***
- ***Always make sure the steering wheel locks into position after adjusting.***
- ***There is a risk of injury to children by getting trapped when adjusting the steering wheel. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.***

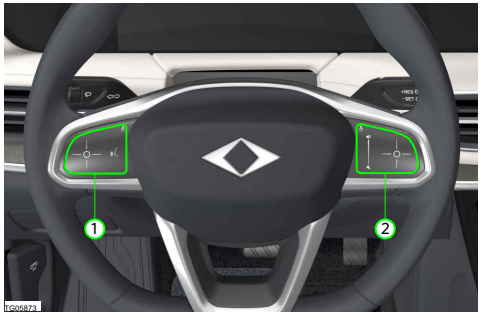
7.4.2 Adjusting the Steering Wheel



1. Push the lever down (B) to unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position by moving vertically and horizontally.
3. Pull the lever up (A) to lock the steering column.
4. Check and ensure that the steering wheel is locked by moving it.

7.4.3 Steering Wheel Switches

The steering wheel switches are touch sensitive and provides haptic feedback in the form of vibrations. Feedback is provided when you press the touch pad on the steering wheel.



1. Left steering wheel switch

   The left steering wheel switch has the following functions:

   - Operate the driver's screen information display (6.2.3.2 Operating the information display (1))
   - Digital assistant (6.2.4 Digital Assistant (if equipped))

2. Right steering wheel switch

   The right steering wheel switch has the following functions:

   - Operate the driver's screen function menu (6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu (2))
   - Adjust/mute the media or phone volume (6.2.3.3 Operating the function menu (2))

You can choose the press sensitivity in two modes:

- Hard Press
- Soft Press

Using the control display settings can be changed.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → General → Display → Touch

- Tap on the button to set the desired steering wheel switch mode.

7.5 Mirrors

7.5.1 Classical Mirror

7.5.1.1 Safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Do not adjust the mirrors while driving as there is a risk of losing vehicle control. Always adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary.***
- ***Always make sure mirrors are positioned correctly and ice, snow, condensation, or other objects are not blocking outside mirrors.***
- ***Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle can be misjudged, such as when changing lanes. Use the rear view mirror for judging distance as well.***

7.5.1.2 Adjusting outside mirror

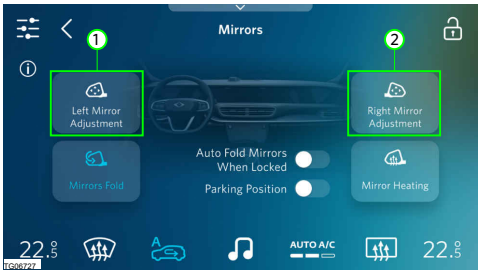
The outside mirrors can be adjusted as per the driver's height and seating position to improve visibility to the rear.

The adjustment can be done using the "control display" and "rotary knob".

Follow the below procedure:

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Mirrors



Select the desired mirror (1) or (2) to adjust.

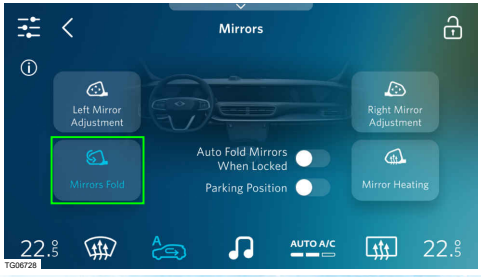
2. Adjust the mirror position using the rotary knob.

7.5.1.3 Power folding outside mirror (if equipped)

Outside mirrors can be folded In or Out using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Mirrors



- Tap on the mirrors fold button to fold the outside mirrors.

Folding the outside mirror is helpful in the following situations:

- When driving through narrow streets
- In car wash

Outside mirrors can be folded in up to the vehicle speed of approximately 20 km/h.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, the outside mirrors will fold out automatically.

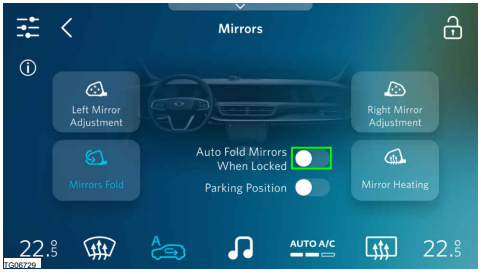
Folding outside mirrors with remote key

For the vehicles equipped with a keyless entry feature, outside mirrors can be folded in/out when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

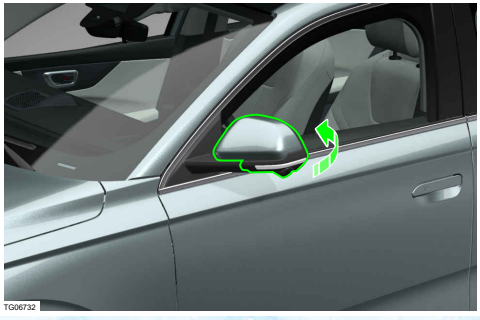
Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Mirrors



- Tap on the auto fold button to activate/deactivate the auto fold function.

7.5.1.4 Manual folding outside mirror (if equipped)



- Grasp the outer edge of the mirror housing and gently push it inward toward the door.

7.5.1.5 Parking position

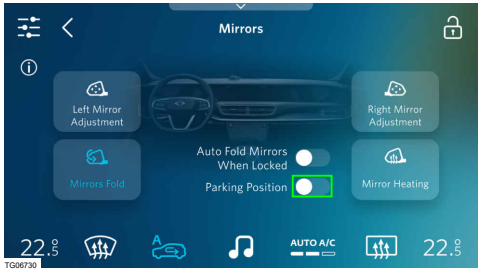
To provide a better view of the kerb or other objects near the ground, the outside mirror glass on the right side is tilted downwards when the gear selector is in the "R" position. The mirror glass will come to its normal position if the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h in "R" mode.

The outside mirror glass will come to its normal position when the gear selector is in the position other than the "R".

The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Mirrors



- Tap on the parking position button to activate/ deactivate the function.

INFORMATION

The right outside mirror is not adjustable if the parking position function is active. If it is manually adjusted, then it will come to its normal position.

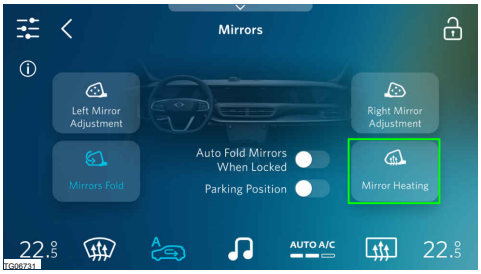
7.5.1.6 Outside mirror heating

The mirror heating function quickly removes misting and ice from the outside mirrors. It also helps to eliminate condensation on the outside mirror glass and improve visibility.

The function can be activated/deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Mirrors



- Tap on the mirror heating button to activate/ deactivate the outside mirror heating.

After 15 minutes, the outside mirror heating will automatically deactivate.

INFORMATION

When max defrost is activated and the outside temperature is below or equal to 15°C, then outside mirror heating and rear window heating are activated automatically. (8.3.2 Max Defrost)

INFORMATION

- ***The outside mirror heating is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the windshield heater or rear window heating is activated or deactivated.***
- ***If the outside mirror heating function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31 °C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or below 30°C.***

7.5.2 Rear View Mirror

7.5.2.1 Rear view mirror auto dimming (if equipped)

The rearview mirror is dimmed automatically depending upon the brightness measured by two light sensors.

- In the rearview mirror glass

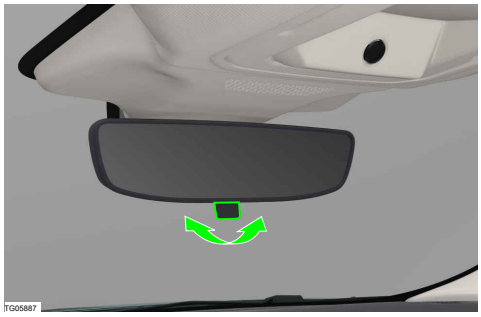
- Back of the rearview mirror

The sensor in the mirror glass monitors the light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, while the sensor on the back monitors the ambient light.

⚠ ATTENTION

The auto dimming function may not work if the sensors are obstructed. Do not obstruct the rearview mirror with objects, such as stickers or any accessories. Keep the sensor area clean.

7.5.2.2 Rear view mirror manual dimming (if equipped)



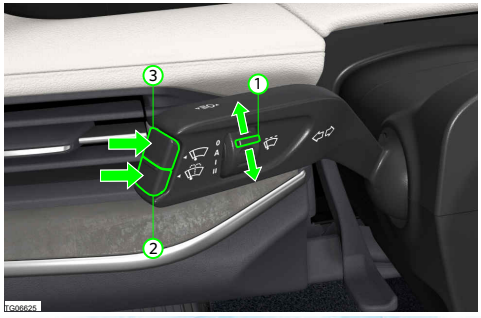
The rearview mirror can be adjusted manually using a lever.

- Pull the lever on the rearview mirror inward for a standard setting.
- Push the lever on the rearview mirror outward to use a dimming view setting.

7.6 Wipers and Windshield Washer

7.6.1 Wiper Controls

7.6.1.1 Front wipers



- 0 – Front wipers Off
- A – Auto (Rain Sensing Mode)
- I – Continuous slow wiping
- II – Continuous fast wiping

To turn On:

- Move button (1) to the "A" position to activate the auto mode.
- Move button (1) to the "I" position to activate slow wiping mode.
- Move button (1) to the "II" position to activate the fast wiping mode.

To turn Off:

- Move button (1) to the "0" position.

To spray and wipe:

- Press the front washer button (2).

To perform single wipe without spray:

- Press the single wipe button (3).

7.6.1.2 Rain sensing wiper

The system adjusts the front wiper speed based on the rain intensity. It works with the rain and light sensors mounted on the windshield, near the rearview mirror.

To turn On:

Move button to "A" position.

To turn Off:

Move button to "0" position.

⚠ ATTENTION

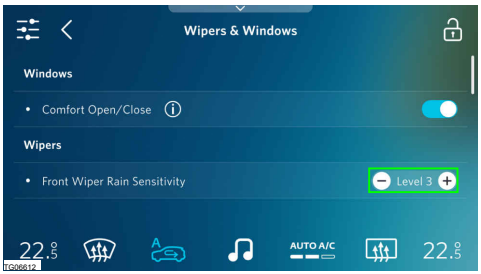
There is a risk of component damage if wipers are activated in the car wash. Always ensure that the auto mode is deactivated in the car wash.

Adjusting front wiper rain sensitivity

The front wiper rain sensitivity can be adjusted using control display.

1. Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Wipers & Windows



2. Tap the "+" or "-" button to increase or decrease the sensitivity.

7.6.2 Refilling Washer Fluid

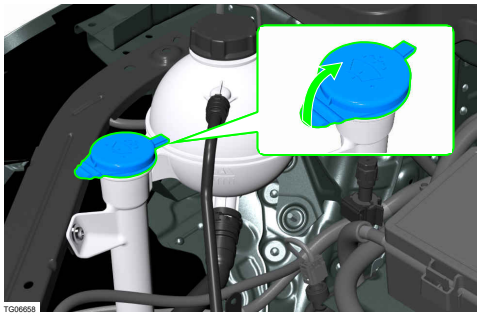
All the spray nozzles share a common reservoir. When there is approximately 0.5 litre of washer fluid remaining in the reservoir, a warning symbol will be displayed on the driver's screen.

Display icon

Icon	Description
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)

Follow the below steps for refilling washer fluid:

1. Open the hood and clean the area around the cap on the washer fluid.
2. Open the cap and fill the reservoir.



3. Wipe up the spills immediately and close the cap carefully.

⚠ WARNING

- ***In temperatures below 4° C, use washer fluid with antifreeze. In cold weather, using a washer fluid without antifreeze can impair visibility through the windshield.***
- ***Do not mix different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Mixing different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.***
- ***The use of washer fluid with high chemical concentration at high temperatures may damage outside plastic parts of the vehicle.***

7.6.3 Checking and Replacing Wiper Blade

- Periodically check the wiper blade rubber for cracks, splits, and roughness. If damaged, replace the wiper blades immediately to prevent damage to the windshield.

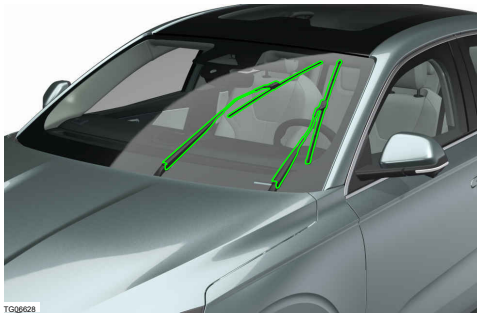
⚠ ATTENTION

- ***The windshield may get damaged if a wiper arm falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the wiper arm firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.***
- ***There is a risk of component damage. Do not lift the wiper arm by holding the wiper blade.***
- ***There is a risk of component damage if the wipers start moving when they are folded out. Always make sure that the wipers are in contact with the windshield when deactivating the service mode.***
- ***There is a risk of component damage if the hood is opened when the wiper blades are folded out. Make sure that the wipers are in contact with the windshield when opening the hood.***
- ***There is a risk of component damage. Do not lift the wiper arm without activating the service mode.***

- **Service mode**

Activating service mode:

1. Switch the vehicle from ready mode to accessory mode.
2. Press the front washer button for 3 seconds within 10 seconds from the vehicle being accessory mode.
3. Front wipers will come to service mode.

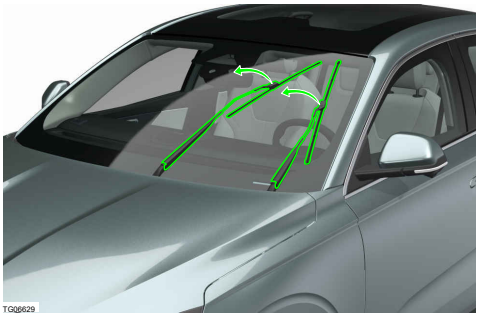


Deactivating service mode:

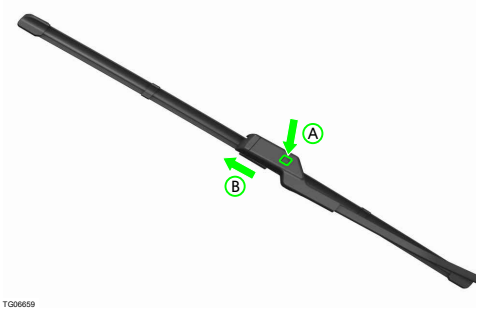
1. Switch the vehicle from accessory mode to ready mode and press the single wipe button.
2. With a single wipe, the wipers will come to the park position.

- **Replacing front wiper blades**

1. Activate the service mode.
2. Lift the wiper arm and hold them securely.



3. Press the wiper blade locking button (A) and remove the wiper blade (B).



4. Reverse the removal procedure for installation.

INFORMATION

Ensure that the wiper blade is locked into place properly.

7.7 Memory Function

7.7.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of entrapment if the seats are moved. Always make sure the seat movement area is free when adjusting the seats.***
- ***There is a risk of an accident if the memory function is activated when the vehicle is moving by losing vehicle control. Never use the memory function when the vehicle is moving.***

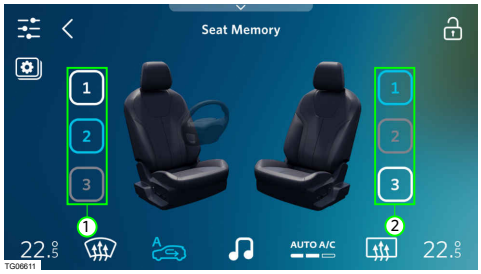
7.7.2 Storing the Position

The memory function allows you to set up to 3 seat positions for the driver and front passenger seats. It also stores the outside mirror position for the set driver seat position.

The seat positions can be stored using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Seat Memory



- A – Driver seat position
- B – Front passenger seat position

Storing the position

1. Turn On the vehicle.
2. Adjust the seat as per the desired seating position.
3. Long press the button (1, 2, or 3) to store the position.

Recalling the stored position

- Short press the desired button (1, 2, or 3). The stored position will be retrieved.

8 Climate Control

8.1 Overview

8.1.1 Brief Overview of Climate Control

Climate control functions can be operated using the control display. Blower speed and temperature can be controlled for individual climate zones.

Front

Go to:

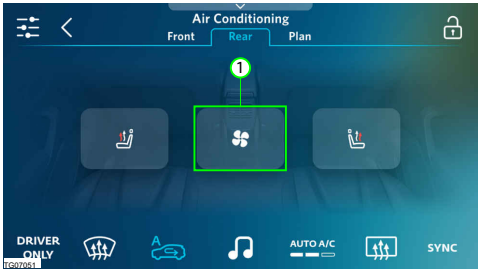
Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

1. Driver side temperature control
2. Driver side air distribution control
3. A/C
4. Climate control On/Off
5. Windshield heater
6. A/C MAX
7. Passenger side air distribution control
8. Passenger side temperature control
9. DRIVER ONLY mode
10. Max defrost
11. Air recirculation
12. Blower speed setting
13. Rear window heating
14. AUTO mode
15. SYNC mode for driver and passenger

Rear

Go to:

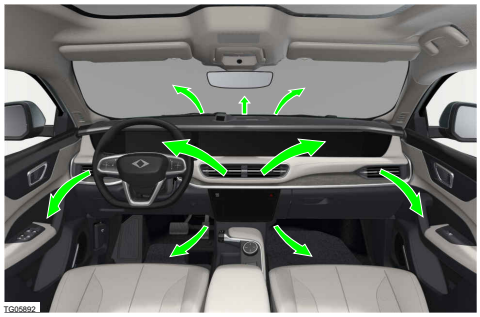
Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Rear



1. Rear row blower On/Off

8.1.2 Air Flow

Air flow at front



Air flow at rear

INFORMATION

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

8.2 Functions & Settings

8.2.1 Overview

The vehicle is equipped with a dual-zone climate control system. Temperature, air distribution, and direction of airflow can be adjusted separately for left and right climate zones.

Climate control functions can be operated using the control display.

INFORMATION

- ***Close all the door windows to obtain optimal performance from the climate control system.***
- ***The climate control function consumes energy from the high-voltage battery to operate. Prolonged use of the climate control system decreases the driving range. Conserve the high-voltage battery charge by using the climate control function when necessary.***

8.2.2 Switching Climate Control On/Off

The climate control can be switched On/Off using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

To switch On, tap on any of the following buttons:

- Temperature (1)
- A/C (2)
- A/C Max (3)
- AUTO mode (4)
- Climate control On/Off (5)

To switch Off, tap on any of the following buttons:

- Climate control On/Off (5)
- Reduce the blower speed to "0" level (6)

8.2.3 Air Distribution Control

The air distribution for driver and passenger side can be adjusted individually using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

1. Driver side air distribution control
2. Passenger side air distribution control

Adjusting air distribution

The following are direction of airflow:

- Direction of windshield
- Direction of face
- Direction of foot area

To indicate the selected air distribution, buttons will light up.

It is not possible to deselect all air distributions at the same time.

INFORMATION

When the air distribution is selected in the direction of windshield, both driver and passenger side air flow will be directed towards the windshield.

8.2.4 Temperature Control

The temperature can be adjusted individually for driver and passenger side using the buttons on the control display. The temperature can be adjusted to between 16°C and 29°C.

The driver side temperature settings will be applied to the rear seats.

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible.

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

1. Driver side temperature control
2. Passenger side temperature control

Adjusting air temperature

Tap the temperature adjustment button (1) or (2) on the control display to set driver or front passenger side temperature.

If the HI or LO appears on the display buttons, the system is operating at the maximum heating or cooling mode.

INFORMATION

The AUTO mode will not work when maximum cooling or heating is activated.

8.2.5 Blower Control

Front row seats

The blower speed can be adjusted in several levels using buttons on the control display.

- Tap the button to increase or decrease the blower speed.

INFORMATION

If the blower speed is adjusted manually, the AUTO mode will be deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

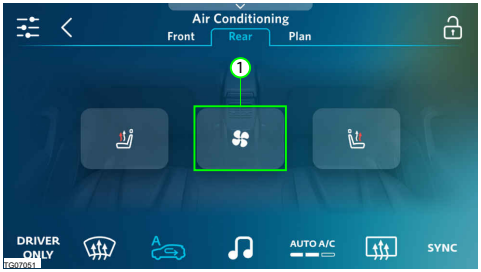
If the blower is turned Off completely, the climate control will not work, which may cause fogging on the inside of the windows.

Rear row seats

The blower speed for rear row seats can be activated or deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Rear



- Tap the button (1) on the control display to activate/deactivate the blower for rear row.

INFORMATION

- ***If the AUTO mode is activated and no passenger is detected in the rear row, blower for rear row will be automatically deactivated.***
- ***Rear air vent must be checked physically if air flow is not sufficient.***

8.2.6 Climate Control Features

1. DRIVER ONLY mode
2. A/C MAX
3. SYNC mode
4. AUTO mode

5. Windshield heater (if equipped)

DRIVER ONLY

When the driver only mode is selected, climate control is activated for the driver side only. When activated, it helps to reduce the energy consumption when no passenger is sitting on the passenger seat.

The feature can be activated/deactivated using the Driver Only button (1) on the control display.

INFORMATION

- ***If the passenger side temperature or air distribution is adjusted using the control display, then the Driver Only mode will be deactivated.***
- ***When the Driver Only mode is activated, the system may provide airflow to the passenger and rear areas for effective heating/cooling.***

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident due to vision impairment because of fogging on the inside of the windows. It is the driver's responsibility to use the "Driver Only" function only when the situation allows to do so.

A/C MAX

When the feature is activated the vehicle interior is cooled with maximum power. The climate control temperature is set to low and the blower speed is high. The air recirculation mode is activated.

The feature can be activated using the A/C MAX button (2) on the control display.

INFORMATION

The A/C Max mode will be deactivated if any other climate control setting is changed.

SYNC Mode

When the SYNC mode is activated, the driver's side climate control settings are applied to passenger's and the rear side.

The SYNC mode can be activated/deactivated using the SYNC button (5) on the control display.

INFORMATION

The SYNC mode is deactivated if the passenger side settings are changed manually.

AUTO mode

The AUTO mode ensures a comfortable climate that can be adjusted with set temperatures and individual settings. The AUTO mode automatically adjusts airflow and air distribution to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

The AUTO mode takes rear seat occupancy into account. If no passenger is detected in the rear, air flow will be deactivated for rear seats.

The AUTO mode will restart after each journey with the last stored climate control setting.

Switching AUTO mode On

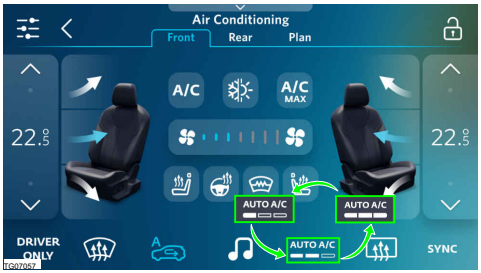
Press the AUTO button (4) on the control display to activate the AUTO mode.

There are the following three pre-configured AUTO modes:

- AUTO – LOW
- AUTO – MID
- AUTO – HIGH

The air flow is optimized by the climate control system to ensure optimal cooling as per the selected mode.

The AUTO modes can be toggled using the control display.



INFORMATION

- ***The AUTO mode is deactivated each time when you manually adjust the temperature, blower speed or air distribution of the climate control system.***
- ***When the AUTO mode is deactivated using the AUTO button (4), the climate control will operate with the last climate control settings.***

Windshield heater (if equipped)

Activating the feature by using the windshield heater button (3) on the control display helps to melt ice or snow formed on the windshield.

8.2.7 Adjusting Air Vents

Certain air vents in the vehicle can be opened/closed and the direction of the airflow from the vent can be adjusted.

The airflow temperature depends on the set temperature of climate control.

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of component damage. Do not install any accessory on the air vents, e.g. a mobile holder or air freshener.

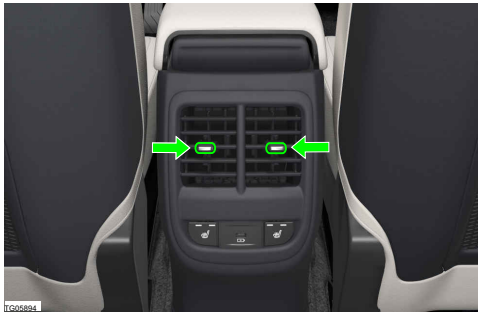
INFORMATION

Temperature-sensitive items such as medicine or food may get damaged or rendered useless by air flowing from the air vents. Never store temperature-sensitive items in front of air vents.

To adjust front air vents

- To change air flow direction, adjust the knob.
- To close the center air vent, move the knob towards center position.
- To close the side air vents, move the knob to the outermost position.

To adjust rear air vent (if equipped)

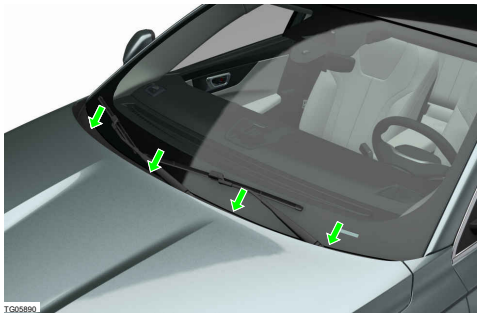


- To change air flow direction, adjust the knobs.
- To close the air vent, move the knob in the direction of arrow.

8.2.8 Tips to Operate Climate Control

General tips

- If you use the air recirculation mode for a long time, the windows may fog up.
- Regardless of the air distribution setting, you can feel a small amount of air coming out of the footwell.
- Do not block the air intake area. Remove snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield to avoid.



- At high outside temperatures, ventilate the vehicle before starting your journey and drive a short distance with the windows open to assist the air conditioning system.
- To quickly cool the vehicle interior, use the A/C max function.
- If you feel the climate control system noise is louder than you prefer, reduce the blower speed manually.
- The air conditioning compressor not only cools the vehicle interior of the car but also cools the high-voltage battery. Therefore, in hot weather, the air conditioner compressor may turn On even when you turned it Off. This is normal as the system's priority is to keep the high-voltage battery cool and within the optimal temperature range to support longevity and optimal performance.
- Even when the vehicle is not in use, howling noises and water circulation sounds may be heard. These noises are normal and occur when the internal cooling system is turned On to support various vehicle functions.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The air conditioning compressor and radiator fan may turn On and make noise even when the outside temperature is cold and the vehicle is

heating or fast charging as the vehicle is designed to maximize efficiency.

Automatic climate control

- Air flow is directed towards the windshield and foot area if the AUTO mode is selected during cold outside temperatures.
- If the AUTO mode is selected when the outside temperature is greater than the vehicle interior, air recirculation mode is activated to maximize the cooling. The system may reduce the blower speed until the air cools.
- Depending on the selected temperature, the automatic climate control system heats or cools down the vehicle interior as quickly as possible.
- It is necessary to open air vents to operate the climate control system efficiently.

8.3 Defrost

8.3.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility through windows, windshield, and rear window increases the risk of collisions and accidents that can result in serious injury.

- ***Before driving, always ensure all the windows, windshield, and rear window are free from condensation, ice, and snow.***
- ***Adjust the heating, air conditioning, and rear window heating to prevent condensation from forming on the windows.***

The defrost function can be controlled using the control display.

1. Max defrost
2. Rear window heating
3. Windshield heater (if equipped)

The Max defrost, Rear window heating, Windshield heater can be activated under the following conditions:

- High-voltage battery SoC is more than 15%.
- No fault on front, rear, side mirror heater component.

8.3.2 Max Defrost

The function is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the windows. When turned On, the air flow is directed towards the windshield and the front door windows.

When the max defrost is tapped twice, the system reverts to the previous climate control settings.

Activating/Deactivating the max defrost function

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

- Tap on the max defrost button to activate/ deactivate the max defrost.

INFORMATION

The max defrost can be activated if the outside temperature is below or equal to 15°C.

8.3.3 Rear Window Heating

The rear window heating function is used to quickly remove condensation and ice from the rear window.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***There is a risk of component damage if a sharp object or window cleaner with abrasives is used to clean the rear window and mirrors. The conductors bonded to the rear glass and mirror can get damaged.***
- ***Do not adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place as there is risk of damage to the mirror glass while adjusting.***

Activating/Deactivating the rear window heating

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

- Tap on the rear window heating button to activate/ deactivate the rear window heating.

After 15 minutes, the rear window heating will automatically deactivate.

INFORMATION

When the max defrost is activated, coolant temperature is below 50°C and the outside temperature is below or equal to 2°C, then the windshield heater, outside mirror heating and rear window heating are activated automatically. (8.3.2 Max Defrost)

INFORMATION

- ***The rear window heating is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the outside mirror heating or windshield heater is activated or deactivated.***
- ***If the rear window heating function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31 °C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or less than 30°C.***

8.3.4 Windshield Heater (if equipped)

The windshield heater function quickly removes misting and ice from the windshield. It also helps to eliminate condensation on the windshield glass and improve visibility.

The windshield heater function can be activated/ deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate → Front

- Tap on the windshield heater button to activate or deactivate the windshield heater.

After 15 minutes, the windshield heater will automatically deactivate.

INFORMATION

When the max defrost is activated, coolant temperature is below 50°C and the outside temperature is below or equal to 2°C, then the windshield heater, outside mirror heating and rear window heating are activated automatically. (8.3.2 Max Defrost)

INFORMATION

- ***The windshield heater is activated or deactivated when the outside temperature is below 30°C and either the outside mirror heating or rear window heating is activated or deactivated.***
- ***If the windshield heater function is active and the outside temperature is equal to or above 31 °C, it will automatically deactivate and activate again once the outside temperature is equal to or less than 30°C.***

8.4 Air Quality Control

8.4.1 Overview

The air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle interior by trapping dust, pollen, and other pollutants. The vehicle is equipped with the air quality sensor, which allows the climate control system to improve the air quality in vehicle interior automatically.

INFORMATION

- ***Cabin air filter needs periodic replacement. 10.1 Maintenance Schedule***
- ***If low air velocity and constant bad smell are perceived, it is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for filter replacement without waiting for periodic maintenance.***

8.4.2 Recirculation Control

The recirculation function offers the possibility to choose between getting fresh outside air and recycling the inside air from the vehicle interior.

When air recirculation mode is turned On, the outside air cannot enter the vehicle interior. The air in the vehicle interior is then recirculated.

The following are the recirculation modes in the vehicle:

1. Auto recirculation
2. Manual recirculation
3. Fresh air/No recirculation

When the AUTO recirculation mode is activated, the system switches between the fresh air and recirculation automatically depending on the outside air quality. The system will turn Off the recirculation mode automatically to prevent condensation depending on the outside air quality.

8.4.3 Activating/Deactivating the Recirculation Mode

The user can activate/deactivate the recirculation mode manually using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Quick Access → Climate

- Tap on the recirculation button to switch between the different modes.

The recirculation buttons for different mode are shown below.

Icon	Description
	Auto recirculation
	Manual recirculation
	Fresh air/No recirculation

INFORMATION

The air recirculation mode turns Off when the defrost function is turned On.

9 Storage Compartments

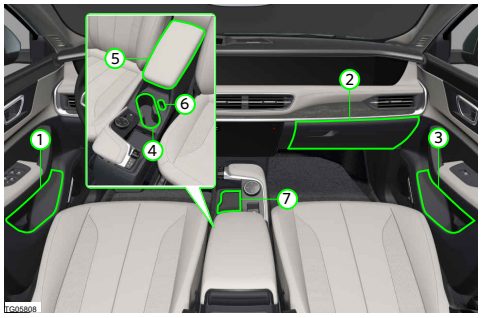
9.1 Storage Locations

9.1.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of personal injury from hot beverages spilling in the event of a sudden braking or vehicle maneuver. Always use beverage containers with a lid. Always store beverage containers securely in the cupholder.***
- ***The risk of accident increases if the objects slide into the driver's footwell. Make sure to stow the objects securely so that they cannot get into the driver's footwell or the front passenger's footwell.***
- ***Keep the stowage compartments closed when the vehicle is in motion.***
- ***Extreme heat can cause closed drink bottles to explode in the vehicle, and extremely cold temperatures can make them burst. Avoid leaving closed drink bottles in a very hot or very cold vehicle for long periods.***
- ***There is a risk of personal injury or material damage if sharp objects are stored in the front seat backrest pockets. Always cover the sharp objects with a suitable cover or cloth.***

9.1.2 Front Row Storage Locations



1. Driver door storage compartment
2. Glove box
3. Front passenger door storage compartment
4. Front cup holder
5. Front armrest
6. Key fob storage area
7. Wireless charging mat

9.1.3 Second Row Storage Locations

1. Front seat backrest pocket
2. Rear door storage compartment

Coat hook

- Coat hook

A coat hook is provided on each side near the rear grab handle for hanging lightweight clothes.

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of personal injury or material damage in the event of a sudden braking or vehicle maneuver when sharp or heavy objects are hung on the coat hook. Do not hang sharp or heavy objects.***
- ***Do not use a coat hanger to hang clothes on the coat hook. There is a risk of injury from objects in the airbag deployment area.***

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of component damage. Do not hang heavy clothes or objects on the coat hook.

9.2 Glove Box Storage

9.2.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of injury. If the glove box is left open, objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey in the event of an accident or braking maneuvers. Close the glove box immediately after using it.

9.2.2 Opening and Closing the Glove Box

The glove box provides storage space for small items.

Opening:

Pull the latch towards left to open the glove box.

Closing:

Close the glove box by pressing on it.

9.3 Center Console Storage

9.3.1 Overview

⚠ WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of personal injury or an accident. Always store objects securely while driving.

When the vehicle is in accessory mode, you may be able to use multiple power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

9.3.2 Wireless Charging (if equipped)

You can charge your mobile phone wirelessly using the wireless charging mat at the center console.

Operating requirements:

- The vehicle is switched On.
- The wireless charging feature is activated.
- The mobile phone is suitable for wireless charging.

To charge mobile phone wirelessly:

- Place the mobile phone as close to the center of mat as possible with the display facing upwards.

When laying the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging mat.

During charging, the surface of the charging mat and the mobile phone can become hot. At higher temperatures, the charge current may be reduced to prevent the mobile phone from overheating. In exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted.

Activating/deactivating wireless charging

The wireless charging function can be activated/ deactivated using the control display.

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → Controls → Wireless Phone Charge

- Tap on the wireless charge button to activate/ deactivate the function.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not place items with magnetic strips or radio-frequency identification chips (e.g., passports, parking tickets, transit passes, or credit cards) near the charging area while charging. Damage may occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

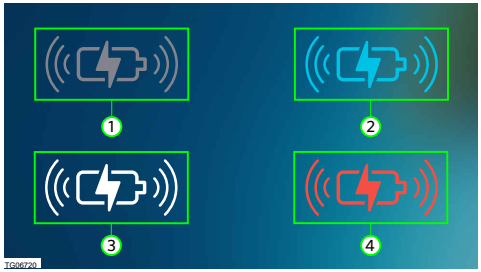
⚠ WARNING

Wireless charging may interfere with the operation of implanted medical devices, such as cardiac pacemakers. Implant users should consult a medical specialist if they have any questions.

INFORMATION

- ***A mobile phone with a case can be charged with the wireless charging mat, but the wireless charging performance may be affected.***
- ***Some smart devices will not provide wireless charging completed information.***

The wireless charging icon on control display indicates the status of function.



1. Wireless charging is disabled
2. Wireless charging is enabled and device is being charged
3. Wireless charging completed
4. Error in wireless charging

9.3.3 USB Ports

The USB ports are labeled with the symbol. When the vehicle is switched On you can use the USB ports for charging purpose only.

Front USB port

The vehicle is equipped with two USB ports located under the front armrest. Open the jumbo box to access the USB ports. (*9.4.1 Front Armrest*)

- Type C port
- Can be used for charging devices
- Charge current: max. 3 A

Rear USB port

- Type C port
- Can be used for charging devices
- Charge current: max. 5 A

9.4 Armrest & Cup Holders

9.4.1 Front Armrest

⚠ WARNING

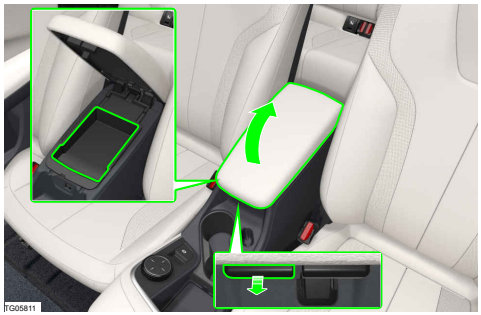
Objects in the armrest storage may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example, in the event of an accident or when braking or taking evasive action. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the armrest cover after using it.

Two storage spaces are available under the front armrest:

- Stowage bin

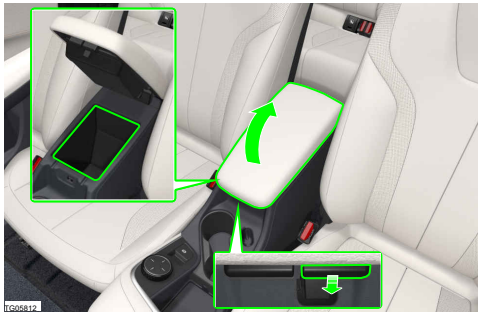
- Jumbo box with cooling

Opening and closing storage bin



- Pull the stowage bin lock knob and lift the armrest cover to open the stowage bin.
- Push the armrest cover until it is latched to close the stowage bin.

Opening and closing jumbo box



- Pull the jumbo box lock knob and lift the armrest cover to open the jumbo box.
- Push the armrest cover until it is latched to close the jumbo box.

Jumbo box cooling

The jumbo box cooling feature can be used to cool drinks or food when the A/C is operational.

- Rotate the vent wheel counterclockwise or clockwise to turn On/Off the cooling.

Turn Off the vent when the cooling is not required.

The jumbo box cooling gets air from the rear row air ducts. If the climate control is in AUTO mode and no passenger is detected on the rear seat, the jumbo box cooling will be automatically deactivated. Turn it On manually using the control display. (8.2.5 Blower Control)

9.4.2 Cup Holders

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of injury from spilling of hot beverages. Do not put any hot beverages in the cupholder when the vehicle is in motion.***
- ***Do not use breakable beverage containers as there is risk of injury in the event of an accident.***

⚠ ATTENTION

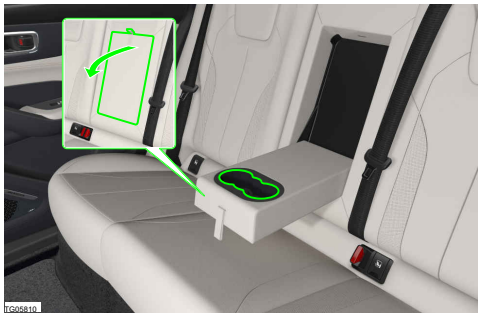
Always use beverage containers in the cup holders with a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to the vehicle equipment.

Front cupholder

There are two cup holders at front in the center console.

Rear cupholder

Two cup holders are available at the rear.



- Open the rear armrest to use the rear cup holder.

9.5 Trunk Storage

9.5.1 Overview

The vehicle has flexible trunk storage capacity that makes it possible to load and secure large objects. By folding down the backrest in the second row of seat, the storage capacity of the vehicle increases considerably. Use the tie bracket hook (if equipped) to secure objects and the parcel shelf to help conceal the load.

⚠ WARNING

- ***The parcel shelf is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the parcel shelf increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.***
- ***The risk of an accident increases due to loose objects, as they can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers. Always stow objects securely in the trunk storage and secure them at the tie bracket hook (if equipped). Use straps suitable for heavy objects.***
- ***Depending on the weight and load distribution, the vehicle's handling characteristics may change. Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.***
- ***Never secure a child safety seat to the tie bracket hook (if equipped).***
- ***Never exceed the permissible axle capacity and vehicle weight.***
- ***There is a risk of fatal injury. Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the tailgate is open. Children could enter the trunk storage and close the tailgate from the inside.***
- ***Never transport passengers in the trunk storage. Every passenger must be secured with the safety belts in the vehicle.***

⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of component damage if any liquid is spilled into the trunk storage area. Always stow containers filled with liquid securely and make sure they are leakproof.

INFORMATION

The tire pressure must be adapted to the load.
(10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information)

9.5.2 Loading

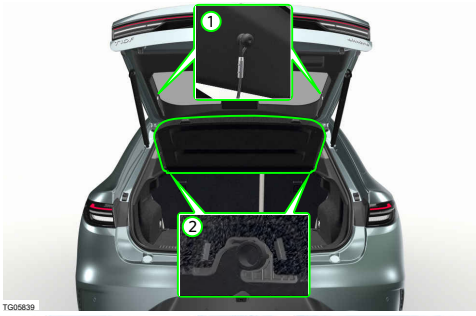
Recommendations on loading

- Load objects in the trunk storage against the backrest whenever possible.
- Use protective material to wrap around any sharp corners and edges.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible, low down, and directly behind the rear seat backrests. If no passengers are in the rear seat, insert both outer seat belts into the opposite buckles.
- Do not stack objects above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not use elastic belts or straps to tie down an object.

9.5.3 Parcel Shelf

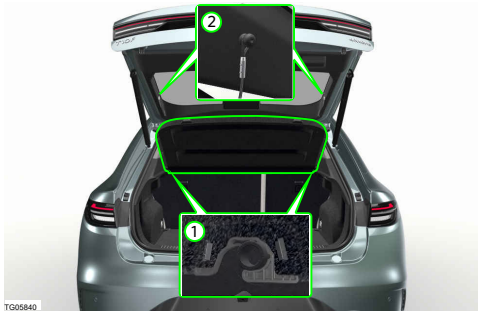
When the tailgate is opened or closed, the parcel shelf is also raised and lowered if the lifting cords are attached.

Removing the parcel shelf:



1. Detach the lifting cords (1) from the tailgate trim.
2. Pull the parcel shelf to release from the groves (2) and remove the parcel shelf.

Installing the parcel shelf:



1. Place the parcel shelf on the position and press into the groves (1).
2. Attach the lifting cords (2) onto the tailgate trim.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not place objects on top of the parcel shelf. There is a risk of damage to the parcel shelf.

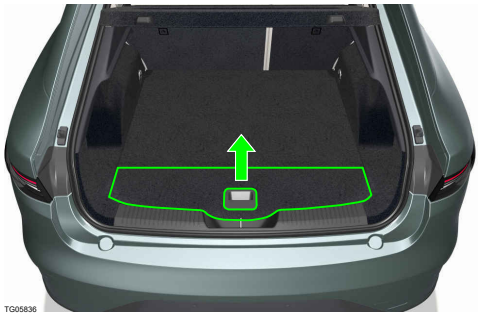
⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of personal injury in the event of a sudden braking or vehicle maneuver from the objects stored on the parcel shelf. Do not transport objects on top of the parcel shelf.

9.5.4 Trunk Storage Box

⚠ ATTENTION

Trunk storage box can be removed from its usage area. If the trunk storage box is removed, loads placed on the trunk floor shall not exceed 50 kg.



The tire repair kit is located in the trunk storage box.

Opening trunk storage box

Pull on the handle and fold the trunk floor forward.

Closing trunk storage box

Press the trunk floor down until it engages.

9.5.5 Anchor Points

Tie bracket hook (if equipped)

There are "4" tie bracket hooks on the side trim panel in the trunk storage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects. It can be used in combination with lashing straps, tensioning straps, or retaining straps.

9.5.6 Folding Rear Seat Backrest

The rear seat backrest is split into two sections. The two sections can be folded forward individually to increase the trunk storage capacity.

⚠ WARNING

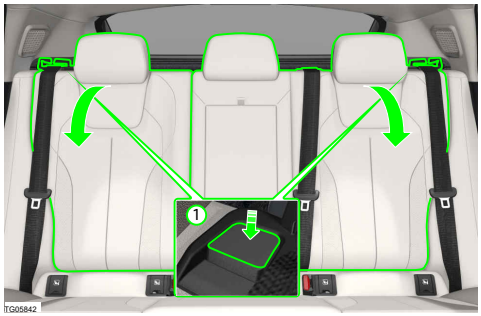
- ***There is a risk of entrapment when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the headrest is kept clear.***
- ***Always ensure backrest is correctly locked to prevent objects from the sliding forward during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.***

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the striker protrudes into the interior. There is a risk of material damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, watch out for the protruding striker and keep this area clear.***
- ***The armrest in the center seat must be raised before the rear seat backrest is folded down.***
- ***Always make sure that the seat belt is positioned correctly after folding up the seat backrest.***

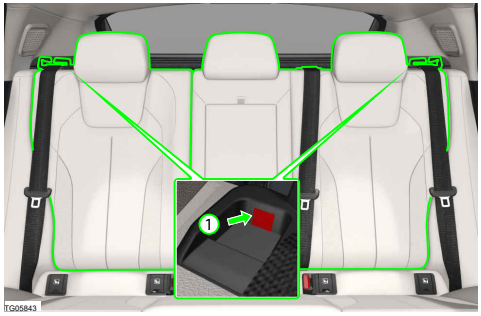
- ***Before folding the rear seat backrest, make sure that the seat belts tongue should not be fixed on the belt buckle***

Folding down the backrest



1. Push the headrests down.
2. Push button (1) on left and/or right backrest and pull forward the required backrest to fold down.

Folding up the backrest

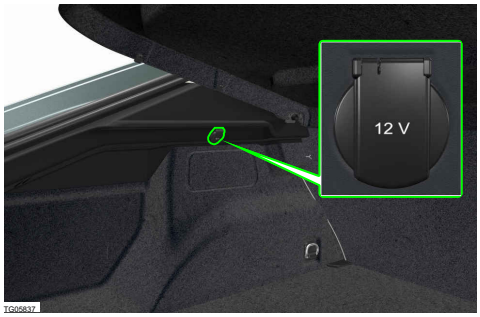


1. Move the backrest upward/rearward.
2. Press the backrest until it locks into position. Make sure that the red label on the button (1) is not visible.
3. Adjust the headrest as required.

9.5.7 12V Power Outlet

⚠ WARNING

- ***Do not connect adapters, multiple plugs or extension cords to the 12V power outlet. This could override the outlet's safety functions.***
- ***Do not let children play with or tamper with the 12V power outlet. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle when the 12V power outlet is active.***
- ***Be aware that connected devices may generate heat and become very hot.***



The 12V power outlet in the trunk compartment can be used to connect the electrical accessories. The power usage from the sockets must not exceed a total of 120 watts. Do not connect multiple devices to the sockets in the vehicle at the same time. The 12V power outlet is labeled with the 12V symbol.

⚠ ATTENTION

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. Always keep the power outlet covered when not in use.

10 Maintenance

10.1 Maintenance Schedule

10.1.1 Overview

Periodic maintenance is essential to get optimum performance from your vehicle. Inadequate or neglected maintenance of your vehicle may lead to major repair expenses. To keep the vehicle reliable and safe, always follow the Togg specified maintenance schedule.

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regular inspection of your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

We recommend that you always use Togg approved parts and get your vehicle serviced by a Togg authorized service. If counterfeit parts are used in your vehicle, optimum vehicle performance is not guaranteed as they may not meet Togg part manufacturing standards.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of serious injury, burns, or electric shock from the high-voltage components. It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized services for high-voltage battery service. Never attempt to remove or modify the high-voltage components.

10.1.2 Service Interval Assist

The service interval assist provides information about the next vehicle service due.

The recommended service interval is based on the normal operation of the vehicle. It may require performing maintenance work more often if the vehicle is operated under load conditions.

Resetting service interval

Togg authorized service will reset the service interval after performing the service.

10.1.3 Maintenance Table

T10F Scheduled Maintenance Table

#	Category	Topic	2 Years	4 Years	6 Years	8 Years	10 Years
			40000 KM	80000 KM	120000 KM	160000 KM	200000 KM
1	Air Conditioning System	Air conditioner pollen cabin filter replacement	R	R	R	R	R
		Air conditioner performance test and general inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
2	Cooling system	Coolant level and density inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
3	Electrical System	Inspect the windshield wipers and adjusting the sprinkler	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Inspect and adjusting the headlamp adjustment if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		12V Battery health check	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
4	Brake system	Front and rear brake pads and discs wear check, replace if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Visual inspection of the brake system for leaks and damage	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Checking the brake fluid level and humidity	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Brake fluid replacement	R	R	R	R	R
5	General Controls	Windshield cleaning fluid level and density control	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Under-vehicle visual inspection	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Visual inspection of Axle/Shock Absorber/Tie rod end/Ball Joint/Steering boot for leaks and damage	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Function checks; Air conditioning, windows, interior/exterior lighting, signal, horn, seat belts	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Electronic system control and software update	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
6	Suspension System	Visual inspection of all suspension parts and connections, replacement if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
7	Steering System	Visual inspection of tires for wear and damage, measurement of tread depths, rotation or replacement if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Checking and adjusting tire pressures	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Tire balancing if necessary (Additional charge)	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
		Checking the Wheel alignment, adjustment if necessary	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
8	Body Controls	Visual inspection of body and attachments for damage and corrosion	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
9	High-voltage System	Control of HV components (Charging cable, HV installation and HV components functional test)	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN
10	Paint	Paint inspection, repair if necessary*	IN	IN	IN	IN	IN

***Some parts may be required to be replaced after checks. Labor and parts costs can be charged additionally.**

R: Replace IN:Inspect

10.2 Low-voltage Battery - 12V

10.2.1 Overview

Along with the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12-volt low-voltage battery. The low-voltage battery supplies power to the vehicle electronic systems when high-voltage system is not active. The battery is charged in accessory, driving, or charging mode, or when there is a thermal request present.

The battery may drain in the following conditions:

- If the hazard lights or the park lights are triggered by the switch and left On.
- If external equipment is installed and power to the equipment is supplied directly from the battery.

It is recommended to replace the low-voltage battery if it remains completely discharged for more than one day.

INFORMATION

The battery sensor provides a more accurate measurement if the vehicle remains off for one hour or more.

For more information regarding low-voltage battery,it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service.

10.2.2 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Touching conductive components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be conductive.***
- ***The low-voltage battery generates hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.***
- ***The low-voltage battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow low-voltage battery fluid to come into contact with eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces.***
- ***If contact with low-voltage battery fluid occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Seek for medical help immediately if your eyes are affected.***

Safety symbols on low-voltage battery

Icon	Description
	Read instruction from Owner's Manual.
	Fire, sparks, and smoking are prohibited.
	Risk of explosion. Do not seal any openings on the low-voltage battery.
	Keep children away.
	Risk of acid burns. Avoid contact with the skin, eyes or clothing.
	Wear protective goggles.

10.2.3 Charging

Your vehicle has a high-voltage to low-voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the low-voltage battery charged by the high-voltage battery. If the low-voltage battery level is low, the high-voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt low-voltage battery when the vehicle is Off without a high-voltage charging plug connected and the hood is closed.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not attempt to charge the low-voltage battery from the vehicle's 12-volt power outlet. It can overload and damage electrical components. There is a risk of material damage.

10.2.4 Jump Starting

Jump starting may have dangerous consequences if done incorrectly. To prevent serious injury or damage to the vehicle, make sure to follow the jump starting procedure outlined in this section. It is highly recommended to seek assistance from Togg authorized service. Follow the safety instructions when working near or handling the low-voltage battery.

Do not attempt to jump-start the vehicle if the low-voltage battery is frozen. When the low-voltage battery is frozen:

- Check for swelling or cracks.
- Thaw it safely.

The low-voltage battery may rupture or explode when jump-starting with a low or frozen battery .

⚠ WARNING

Do not touch low-voltage battery terminals and cables when the vehicle is in driving or accessory mode.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.***
- ***Do not allow the positive (+) and negative (-) jumper cables to touch, as it may cause sparks.***
- ***Do not directly connect the low-voltage battery negative (-) to the jump cable. Connect the jump cable to the battery sensor and the vehicle ground cable connection point, or one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. A direct negative(-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.***
- ***Be sure to use only a 12V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump-start. Using batteries with other voltages can damage the battery or even cause an explosion.***

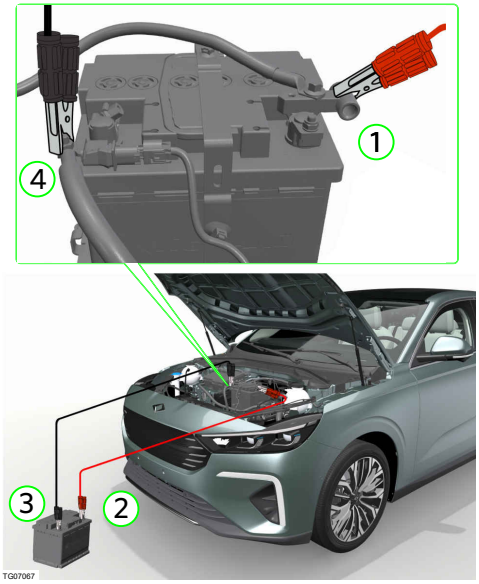
Follow the below steps to jump starts the vehicle:

1. Open the hood.
2. Position the vehicles close enough so that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicle body parts to contact.
3. Always avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment, even when the vehicles are turned Off.
4. Turn Off all vehicle features such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc.
5. Apply the electric parking brake and shift the gear selector to the "P" mode.

INFORMATION

- ***Keep the jumper cables from touching anything other than the correct battery or jumper terminals, or the appropriate ground.***
- ***Battery sensor calibration may become inaccurate if jump-start cables are directly connected to the battery terminals.***
- ***Do not lean over the battery when making connections.***

6. Remove the low-voltage battery positive (+) terminal cover located on the battery.



7. Connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) terminal of your vehicle (1).
8. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery or jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
9. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
10. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
11. Start the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes. Then, start your vehicle.
12. Keep your vehicle running for at least 30 minutes in accessory or driving mode to ensure the low-voltage battery receives enough charge to start on its own after the vehicle is turned Off. A completely discharged battery may need up to 60 minutes of runtime to fully recharge. If the vehicle runs for less time, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle doesn't start after several attempts, it may need service. It is recommended to contact Togg authorized service.

Disconnect the jumper cables:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

⚠ ATTENTION

Always ensure the low-voltage battery cables are tightened and the battery positive terminal cover is closed after jump-starting the vehicle. Failing to do so may result in damage to related parts, noise issues, or the entry of foreign substances.

10.2.5 Replacing Low-voltage Battery

If the low-voltage battery needs to be replaced, a display icon will be shown on driver screen with an information pop-up. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service.

Display icons

Icon	Description
	Low-voltage system warning (Icon is steady)
	Low-voltage system critical (Icon is steady)

INFORMATION

- ***It is strongly recommended to use only Togg-approved batteries. Using any other battery may cause inaccurate measurements by the battery sensor.***
- ***Only AGM technology batteries should be installed.***

10.2.6 Disposing Low-voltage Battery

The low-voltage battery must be recycled in an ecofriendly manner at the end of its service life. Disposing of batteries incorrectly can lead to environmental damage and health hazards. Dispose of the battery according to your local laws or regulations.

TG07066

It is recommended to consult a Togg authorized service or similar authorized battery collecting points if you are uncertain about the disposal procedure of this type of waste.

10.3 Fuses and Relays

10.3.1 Overview

⚠ ATTENTION

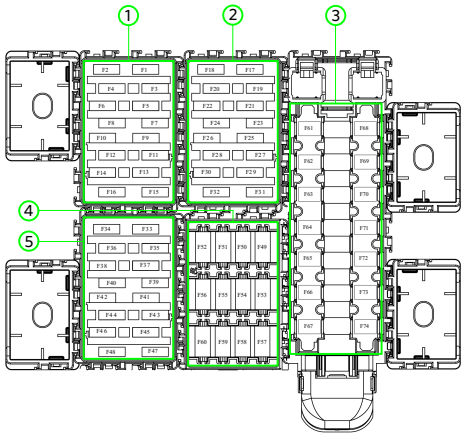
There is a risk of fire or material damage if a fuse is replaced with a higher rating. Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or material other than the fuse.

The fuses protect electrical systems against excessive current. When a device does not work, you must check the fuse element inside the blade fuse for a break/melt.

10.3.2 Cabin Fuse Box

This fuse box is located near the steering column.

To access the cabin fuse box remove the cabin fuse box cover.



TG06636

1. Cabin Mini FB1
2. Cabin Mini FB2
3. J Module Cabin
4. Cabin ATO FB1
5. Cabin Mini FB3

Cabin Mini FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F1	Infotainment Domain Control Computer M and A	7.5A
F2	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	7.5A
F3	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	15A
F4	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	15A
F5	Body Domain Control Computer Exterior Light I	20A
F6	Not used	Reserved
F7	Child Presence Detection, Child Presence Detection 2	2A
F8	HVAC Actuator	7.5A
F9	On Board Diagnostic (OBD) CL30	15A
F10	Body Domain Control Computer C	7.5A
F11	Not used	Reserved
F12	Air Quality Sensor	2A
F13	Body Domain Control Computer Turn Light CL30	10A
F14	Low Tone Horn	10A
F15	High Tone Horn	10A
F16	Reserved for Alcohol Interlock A	Reserved

Cabin Mini FB2

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F17	High-voltage Battery A	5A
F18	Cluster Infotainment Display D	10A
F19	Cluster Infotainment Display C	7.5A
F20	Display Second Control B	10A
F21	Not used	Reserved
F22	Telematic Control Unit A	2A
F23	Rear Electric Drive Unit	5A
F24	Wireless Charging Mat A	5A
F25	Smart Access System Central Module	2A
F26	NFC B-Pillar	2A
F27	Rotary Control Unit	2A
F28	Shift Lever CL30	2A
F29	Column Electrical Assembly I	2A
F30	Not used	Reserved
F31	Brake Light Switch	2A
F32	Body Domain Control Computer Main Power	15A

Cabin ATO FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F49	Windshield Wiper System Front	40A
F50	Not used	Reserved

F51	Not used	Reserved
F52	Not used	Reserved
F53	Not used	Reserved
F54	Not used	Reserved
F55	Not used	Reserved
F56	Body Domain Control Computer A	20A
	Cabin Mini FB3	
F57	HVAC Box B	35A
F58	Not used	Reserved
F59	Not used	Reserved
F60	Not used	Reserved

Cabin FB3

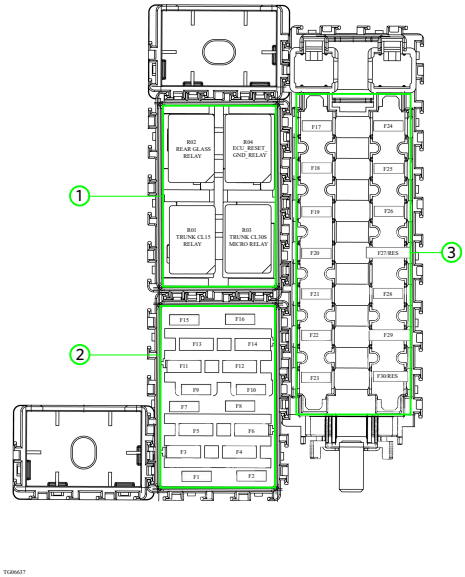
Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F33	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	2A
F34	Interior Lighting	5A
F35	Reserved for Alcohol Interlock A	Reserved
F36	Column Electrical Assembly E	2A
F37	Camera Infrared Driver B	2A
F38	Rain Light Sensor	2A
F39	Driver Switch Panel B	2A
F40	Not used	Reserved
F41	Body Domain Control Computer G	2A
F42	Camera Mirror System Right Display Monitor C	2A
F43	Camera Mirror System Left Display Monitor C	2A
F44	Inside Rear View Mirror Chromic	2A
F45	Not used	Reserved
F46	Body Domain Control Computer F	2A
F47	Power Electronics Unit G	5A
F48	Power Electronics Unit G	5A

J Module Cabin

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F61	Infotainment Domain Control Computer CL30	40A
	Display Second Control CL30	
F62	Body Domain Control Computer Exterior Light I	40A
	Body Domain Control Computer Main Power	
F63	HVAC Box	50A
	HVAC Actuator	
	Alcohol Interlock	
F64	Body Domain Control Computer Washer	50A
	Windshield Wiper System Front	
F65	Body Domain Control Computer Exterior Light II	20A
F66	Front Left Window Regulator Motor A	30A
F67	Front Right Window Regulator Motor A	30A
F68	Cabin Mini FB1	40A
	Cabin Mini FB2	
F69	Low Tone Horn Micro Relay (R01)	20A
	High Tone Horn(Alarm) Micro Relay (R02)	
F70	Telematic Control Unit CL30	30A
	Infotainment Domain Control Computer M and A	
	Infotainment Domain Control Computer A	
	Shift Lever CL30	
	Power Electronics Unit G I CL30	
	Power Electronics Unit G II CL30	

F71	CL30S Relay (R04)	30A
F72	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay (R06)	40A
F73	Front Glass Heater Mini Relay (R05)	40A
F74	Cabin Mini FB2	50A
	Cabin ATO FB1	

10.3.3 Trunk Fuse Box



1. Trunk micro FM1
2. Trunk mini FB1
3. Trunk J module

Trunk Micro FM1

Relay Code	Load
R01	Trunk CL15 Relay
R02	Rear Glass Relay
R03	Trunk CL30S Micro Relay
R04	Reserved

Trunk J Module

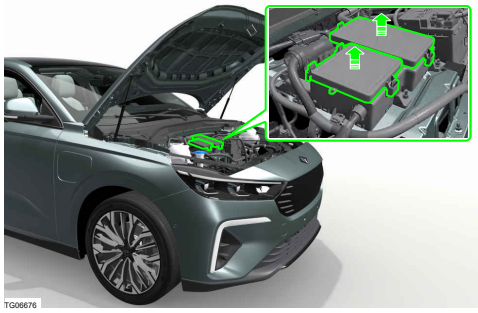
Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F17	Trunk CL15 Relay (R01)	30A
F18	Tailgate ECU A	20A
F19	Rear Left Window Regulator Motor	30A
F20	Rear Right Window Regulator Motor	30A
F21	Seat Control Unit Co-Driver A	20A
F22	Trunk CL30S Relay (R03)	30A
F23	Tailgate ECU A	20A
F24	Rear Glass Relay (R02)	20A
	Brake Booster Modulator B	
F25	Amplifier Audio External A	40A
F26	Rear Glass Relay (R02)	30A
F27	Not used	Reserved
F28	Seat Control Unit Driver A	20A
F29	Brake Booster and Modulator A	40A
F30	Not used	Reserved

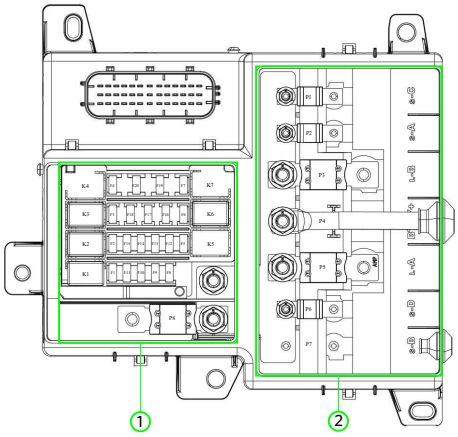
Trunk Mini FB1

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F1	Steering - Electric Power Steering ECU CL15	5A
	Column Electrical Assembly CL15	
	E Drive Unit Front CL15	

F2	Wireless Charging Mat A	2A
F3	Airbag Control Module A	5A
F4	Body Domain Control Computer G	2A
F5	Camera Front Smart	2A
F6	Ultrasonic Sensor ECU A	2A
F7	External Sound Generator CL15	2A
	External Sound Generator VCC	
	E Drive Unit Rear CL15	
F8	Brake Booster and Modulator A CL15	2A
	Brake Pad Front CL15	
F9	Radar Long-range Front	2A
F10	Dual Port USB Charger	5A
F11	Radar Midrange Rear Left A	2A
F12	Radar Midrange Rear Right A	2A
F13	USB Charging Ports	7.5A
F14	12V Power Outlet Trunk	20A
F15	Body Domain Control Computer F	5A
F16	Brake Booster and Modulator B	2A

10.3.4 Engine Compartment Fuse Box





1. Relay and Fuse Box
2. Main Side

Relay and Fuse Box

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
F1	Water Pump Heater Relay Supply	10A
F2	Water Pump Electric Drive Unit Supply	10A
	Fan Assembly Relay Supply	
F3	Water Pump Battery Supply	10A
	Valve Supply Relay Supply	
F4	Not used	Reserved
F5	Not used	Reserved
F6	VCU Trigger Relay Supply	2A
F7	Not used	Reserved
F8	AC Compressor Supply	2A
F9	VCU Trigger Supply	2A
F10	Not used	Reserved
F11	Not used	Reserved
F12	Not used	Reserved
F13	Not used	Reserved
F14	Sens Supply	2A

F15	Front Electric Drive Unit Supply	5A
F16	CL30 Active Grill Shutter	2A
F17	NOT USED	Reserved
F18	High-voltage Battery Supply	2A
F19	Intelligent Battery Sensor Supply	7.5A
F20	PTC Heater	20A
K1	Water Pump Heater Relay	-
K2	Water Pump Electric Drive Unit Supply	-
	Fan Assembly Relay Supply	
K3	Water Pump Electric Drive Unit Fan Assembly Relay	-
K4	Not used	Reserved
K5	Not used	Reserved
K6	VCU Trigger Relay	-
K7	Not used	Reserved

Main Side

Cavity Number	Load	Fuse Rating (amp)
P1	Brake Booster and Modulator Supply	40A
P2	Electric Power Steering Supply	125A
P3	Cabin Fuse Box Supply	175A
P4	Low-voltage Battery Supply	-
P5	Trunk Fuse Box Supply	125A
P6	Fan Supply	70A
P7	Not used	Reserved
P8	Power Electronics Unit Supply	250A

10.3.5 Identifying the Blown Fuse

⚠ WARNING

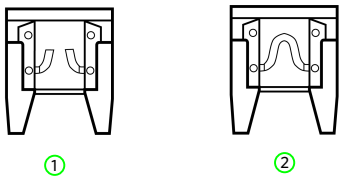
There is a risk of fire due to short circuit. Do not use metal objects or screwdriver to remove the blown fuse.

INFORMATION

If any fuse is removed for any reason, it should be refitted properly at its original position.

If any of the function of the vehicle is not working inspect the corresponding fuse. If the fuse is blown, replace it.

Below is an example of a blown fuse and a good fuse.



TG02537

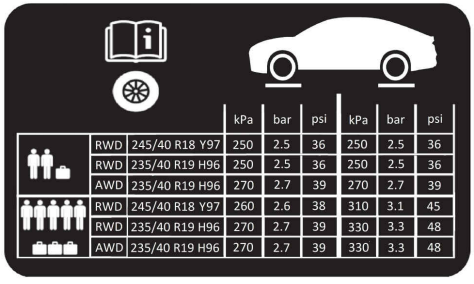
1. Blown fuse
2. Good fuse

Inspecting the fuse

1. Turn Off the vehicle.
2. Remove the cabin fuse box cover.
3. Pull out the fuse.
4. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
5. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized workshop for assistance.

10.4 Wheels and Tires

10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information

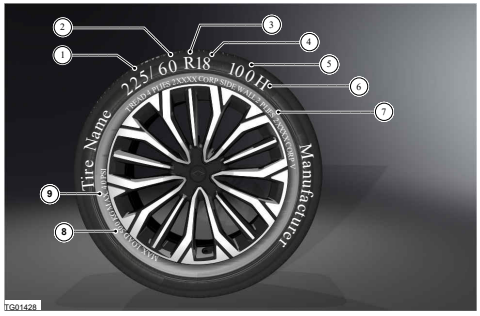


			kPa	bar	psi	kPa	bar	psi
	RWD	245/40 R18 Y97	250	2.5	36	250	2.5	36
	RWD	235/40 R19 H96	250	2.5	36	250	2.5	36
	AWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	270	2.7	39
	RWD	245/40 R18 Y97	260	2.6	38	310	3.1	45
	RWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	330	3.3	48
	AWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	330	3.3	48

TG05854

The tire inflation pressure information is located on the driver side B- pillar. The tire pressure inflation information is applicable to all tire sizes and makes that have been approved by Togg. The tire inflation pressure should be used according to the load conditions. For example, if the vehicle is partially loaded, use the specified inflation pressure for a partially loaded vehicle.

10.4.2 Understanding Tire Specification



1. **225:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.
2. **60:** Indicates the ratio of the tire's base width to its sidewall height and is expressed as a percentage.
3. **R:** Indicates a radial type of tire.
4. **18:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches.
5. **100:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that signifies how much weight a tire can carry.
6. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed symbol. The speed symbol denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure.
7. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers must also indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.
8. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the vehicle's tire information placard located on the B-Pillar for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
9. **Maximum permissible inflation pressure:** Indicates the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.

10.4.3 Tire Age

Tires degrade over time due to factors like weather, storage conditions, and usage (load, speed, inflation pressure). In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear.

Heat from hot climates or frequent high loads accelerates tire aging, leading to more frequent replacements. Replace your spare tire along with the road tires, or after six years, even if unused.

Tire age can be determined by production date stamp on the side wall. The 1st and 2nd positions represent the calendar week and the 3rd and 4th positions state the year of manufacture. E.g., If it is (3422) then the date of tire manufacture is 34th week of 2022.

⚠ ATTENTION

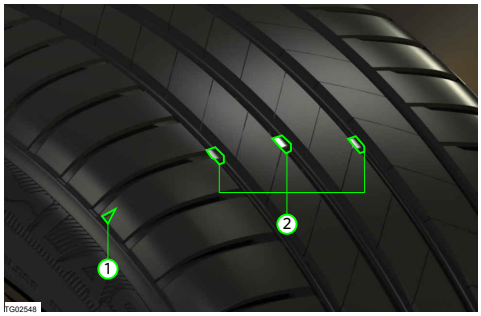
A tire with visible cracks or discoloration should be replaced immediately.

10.4.4 Speed Symbols

A tire's Speed Symbol (SS) indicates the maximum speed for which the tire has been certified and should be at least equivalent to the vehicle's top speed.

Letter Rating	Speed
M	up to 130km/h (81mph)
N	up to 140km/h (87mph)
Q	up to 160km/h (100mph)
R	up to 171km/h (106mph)
S	up to 180km/h (112mph)
T	up to 190km/h (118mph)
U	up to 200km/h (124mph)
H	up to 210km/h (130mph)
V	up to 240km/h (149mph)
W	up to 270km/h (168mph)
Y	up to 299km/h (186mph)

10.4.5 Tire Tread



The tires have wear indicator strips running across or parallel to the tread. The letters TWI or Triangle (1) are printed on the side of the tire. When approximately 1.6 mm is left on the tread, these strips (2) become visible and indicate that the tire should be replaced. Tires with less than 1.6 mm tread offer very poor traction. When replacing worn tires, it is recommended that the tire should be identical in type (radial), pattern and size to the one being replaced. Using a tire of the same make (manufacturer) will help prevent alteration of the driving characteristics of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control. Insufficient tire tread reduces tire grip. In heavy rain or slush, the risk of hydroplaning increases, especially if the vehicle speed is not adjusted to match the conditions.

10.4.6 Snow Chains

The use of snow chains can help improve traction in winter driving conditions. Togg approved snow socks can also be used to improve traction in winter driving as an alternative to snow chain.

Snow chains can be used on your vehicle with the following restrictions:

⚠ ATTENTION

For vehicles with AWD or RWD, snow chains should be installed on rear wheels only. Use only manufacturer approved snow chains.

- If the vehicle is fitted with aftermarket, accessory or custom tires and rims of different size than the original tires and rims, chains in some cases cannot be used. There must be sufficient clearance between chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Some strap-on type chains will interfere with brake components and therefore cannot be used.
- If snow chains are installed, the maximum permissible speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Comply with the installation instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

⚠ ATTENTION

Avoid bumps, potholes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains. The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains.

INFORMATION

Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.

10.4.7 Tire Damages

Inspect tires regularly for damage, wear, and the presence of foreign bodies.

Vehicle behavior may indicate tire damage or other faults. Make sure there are no vibrations, noises or unusual handling characteristics when the vehicle is in motion.

Damage can be caused by the following situations:

- Driving over kerbs
- Road damage
- Insufficient tire inflation pressure
- Overloading the vehicle
- Incorrect tire storage

⚠ WARNING

- ***Driving over obstacles, kerbs or damaged road surfaces at high speed can damage the tire. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident and material damage. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.***
- ***There is a risk of accident if the tires are damaged and inflation pressure is reduced. There is a risk of losing vehicle control. If you suspect tire damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the rims and tires checked by an authorized workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there.***

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not repair damaged tires. Have them replaced.

10.4.8 Storing Tires

- After removing wheels, store them in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Protect the tires from contact with oil, grease or fuel.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from the wheels or tires.

⚠ ATTENTION

When storing complete wheels (tires mounted on rims), they should be suspended off the floor or placed on their sides on the floor. Tires removed from rims should be stored on their sides or standing upright but should not be suspended.

10.4.9 Changing the Tire and Rim

It is recommended to have the wheels fitted and balanced by a Togg authorized service.

Rims and tires recommended by Togg are the best possible combination for your vehicle.

Rim type	Rim Size	Rim Offset	Tire Size
18"	8JX18	45	245/40 R18 97Y
19"	8J×19	45	235/40 R19 96H

Tire replacement

Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first approx. 500 km with new tires.

- Only use tires with the same design, size, and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- Togg recommends replacing both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- If you would like to use different tires, note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size.

INFORMATION

Using non-original tires and/or rims may adversely affect the TPM system and driving safety.

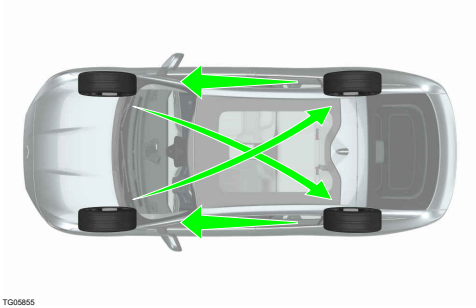
⚠ ATTENTION

It is recommended to replace tires at a Togg authorized service. Damage to the TPM system may occur if the tire is replaced at an unauthorized workshop.

Tire rotation

Togg recommends to perform tire rotation at every 10,000 km. Rotating tires at the recommended interval will help tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

The illustration explains the recommended tire rotation pattern.



TG05855

Changing a wheel

Wheel changes must always be carried out correctly. The following instructions show how to remove and install a wheel and what is important to keep in mind. Make sure that the tire dimension is approved for use on the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- ***Make sure all the passengers move to a safe location if the tire must be changed near the passing traffic.***
- ***Never crawl under or allow any part of your body to be extended under a vehicle supported by a jack.***

⚠ ATTENTION

Make sure no passenger is present in the vehicle while jacking the vehicle.

Removing a wheel

1. Park the vehicle on flat or level surface.
2. Engage the electric parking brake.
3. Turn Off the vehicle.
4. Block the wheels using the chocks to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

5. For models with 19" wheels: Remove the star wheel hub cover and slightly loose the wheel bolts.

   For models without 19" wheels: Slightly loose the wheel bolts.

6. Use specified jacking points to lift the vehicle using jack. (*10.5 Vehicle Jacking*)
7. Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed can move freely. Unscrew the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Installing a wheel

1. Clean the contact surfaces between the wheel and the wheel hub.
2. Lift the wheel into place. Tighten the wheel bolts securely.
3. Lower the vehicle so that the wheel cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern. It is important to securely tighten the wheel bolts. Torque to 133 Nm with the torque wrench.
5. For models with 19" wheels: Install the star wheel hub cover.
6. Inflate the tire to the recommended pressure with the compressor in the trunk and monitor the pressure through the tire pressure monitoring system. (4.10 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS))

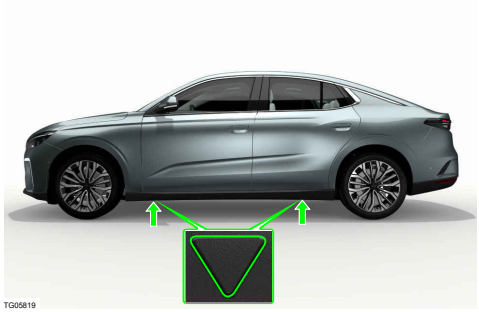
10.5 Vehicle Jacking

10.5.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is inside the vehicle before raising it.***
- ***Position the vehicle jack only at the designated jacking points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.***
- ***Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury is increased when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.***
- ***To reduce the risk of injury, no work should be performed under the vehicle while it is raised.***
- ***To reduce the risk of accident, do not start the vehicle or release the electric parking brake.***
- ***The jack may damage the vehicle floor and/or the high-voltage battery if used incorrectly. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the designated jacking points. Ensure that no parts of the underbody trim are damaged.***

10.5.2 Jacking Points



The reinforced jack attachment/lifting points are available on the area behind the triangles on the rocker molding.

11 Breakdown Assistance

11.1 eCall (Emergency Call)

11.1.1 General Information

The emergency call (eCall) function can be used to request help in the event of an accident or emergency, automatically or manually. The connection is established to a 112 call centre or a third-party service provider. This depends upon the local regulations and the specific mobile network.

The function uses integrated mobile communication in the vehicle which, cannot be deactivated. In highly adverse conditions due to technical reasons, it might not be possible to establish a connection with the 112 call centre.

In an eCall, person and vehicle-related data is transmitted to the 112 call centre in order to determine what rescue measures are required, provided that this is available.

The collection and transmission of the data to the 112 call centre are solely to use the eCall system within the specified emergencies and in the context of the applicable legal provisions. The eCall system is not traceable and there is no permanent tracking of the vehicle.

The following data is transmitted:

- Vehicle's current position
- Vehicle type
- The emergency call triggered time
- Activation type of eCall manually or automatically
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type

The following are the requirements to initiate the eCall:

- The vehicle is:
  - Turned On or awake for making manual eCall.
  - Turned On for making automatic eCall.
- eCall is operational
- Mobile network is available

INFORMATION

The emergency call (eCall) function must only be used in case of an emergency or dangerous situation.

11.1.2 Automatic eCall

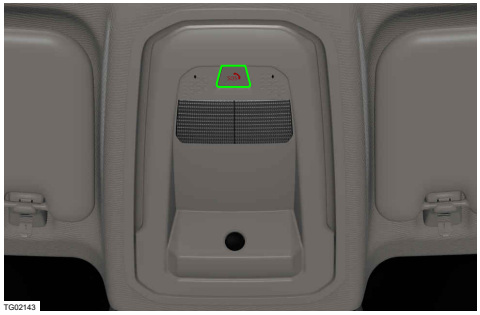
When airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, an eCall is triggered immediately. The automatic eCall cannot be cancelled using the SOS button.

If no response is received from the vehicle by the 112 call centre, rescue measures can be initiated.

INFORMATION

The automatic emergency call (eCall) will not be triggered if the vehicle is turned Off.

11.1.3 Manual eCall



Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

- If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established with the 112 call centre.
- A message on the control display will appear when the connection is established with the 112 call centre.
- If the SOS button is pressed again within 10 seconds after the first button press time, the eCall will be cancelled. A message on the control display will appear to show the cancellation request of the eCall.
- If the eCall connection is established, and due to loudspeaker fault, you are unable to hear the 112 call centre voice. The vehicle occupant's voice can still be heard by the 112 call centre.

11.1.4 eCall Malfunction

Icon	Description
	eCall (Emergency Call) malfunction (Icon is steady)

The malfunction in the eCall system will be indicated on the driver's screen with a message. The emergency call function may not work.

It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service and have the system checked immediately.

11.1.5 Contacting Togg

Togg Care and Roadside Assistance:
+49-711-7815-8644

Togg Care e-mail : toggcare@togg.eu

11.1.6 TPS eCall

TPS eCall (Third-Party Service eCall) is an emergency call system in your vehicle that connects to a third-party service provider. This service is designed to help you get assistance quickly in an emergency.

TPS eCall initiates

- Automatically: If your vehicle's sensors detect a serious accident (e.g., airbag deployment), the system can automatically place an eCall.
- Manually: You can also manually initiate an eCall by pressing the designated button in the vehicle.

When a TPS eCall is made, it uses mobile wireless networks to transmit the Minimum Set of Data (MSD) and establish an audio channel between the vehicle and the third-party service provider. Minimum set of data (MSD) contains information about the vehicle.

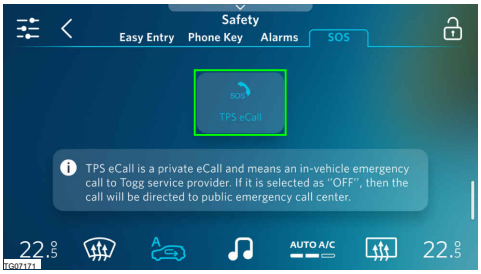
A Third-Party Service Provider acts as the initial point of contact for your TPS eCall. They are recognized by national authorities to receive the call and forward minimum set of data (MSD) to the eCall PSAP (Public safety answering point).

This feature allows to choose the preferred eCall service between Pan-European eCall (Public eCall) and TPS eCall (Private eCall).

The eCall can be selected using a control display,

Go to:

Control Display → Home Page → Menu → My Device → Safety → SOS



- Tap on button to turn On/Off the TPS eCall feature.

INFORMATION

The operational status of the TPS eCall feature is indicated by its button's illumination, blue signifies an active state and white denotes an inactive state.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPS eCall, it will be visible through the control screen. Once it is visible, the customer can select Public eCall or Private eCall.

When the vehicle is first used, the TPS eCall (Private eCall) service will be active by default.

The TPS eCall feature can be manually toggled ON or OFF using the control screen. However, the system is designed to default TPS eCall to ON, ensuring it remains active in every condition such as profile changes or vehicle sleep cycles.

INFORMATION

If the vehicle TPS feature is "ON" as "Private", but the connection is failed during the TPS eCall communication. In this case, there will be a fallback mechanism, so that 112 eCall will be automatically activated.

11.2 Emergency Equipment

11.2.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking maneuver, or an accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- ***Always secure the first aid kit and warning triangle safely in the designated holders in the vehicle.***

11.2.2 Overview

TG07175

11.2.3 Warning Triangle

The warning triangle is located in the trunk.

11.2.4 First Aid Kit

The first aid kit is located in the trunk.

Some items in the first aid kit have a limited life. Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired promptly. After use, renew the contents if necessary and stow the first aid kit safely again.

11.3 Towing

11.3.1 Overview

Togg recommends transporting your vehicle in the case of a breakdown, rather than towing it away.

If you notice the vehicle has lost coolant, do not tow it. Transport the vehicle instead.

To ensure proper towing and to prevent accidental damage to your vehicle, take help of Togg Care.

TG02147

11.3.2 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

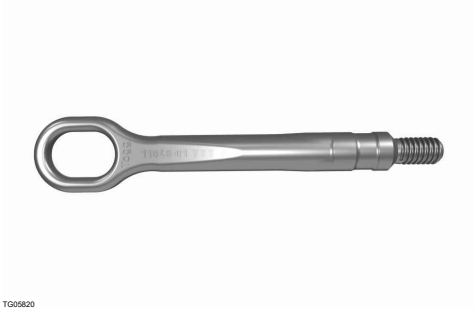
- ***Do not tow the vehicle with one axle raised, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle. Always transport the vehicle on a truck bed.***
- ***Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing hook, body parts or chassis parts.***

⚠ ATTENTION

The vehicle can be damaged, e.g. the vehicle paintwork, while removing and fitting the cover and towing hook.

- ***Remove and install the cover and the towing hook carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.***

11.3.3 Towing Hook



TG05820

Always keep the towing hook in the vehicle. The towing hook can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The towing hook is located in the trunk storage.

⚠ ATTENTION

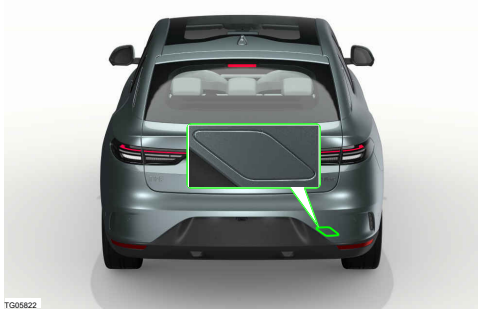
Avoid transverse loads on the towing hook, for example, do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.

Fitting towing hook at front

TG05821

1. Remove the towing hook from the trunk storage.
2. Remove the tow hook cover provided on the front bumper by pressing/pulling it.
3. Turn the towing hook counterclockwise into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible.

Fitting towing hook at rear



1. Remove the towing hook from the trunk storage.
2. Remove the tow hook cover provided on the rear bumper by pressing/pulling it.
3. Turn the towing hook counterclockwise into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible.

11.3.4 Towing Other Vehicle

You should only tow other vehicle if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Switch On the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

⚠ WARNING

- ***If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users.***
- ***The risk of an accident highly increases while towing, for example, due to colliding with the vehicle being towed.***

⚠ ATTENTION

Always ensure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

Towing with rope

- Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
- Apply the brakes very carefully.
- Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Towing with tow bar

- The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

11.4 Hazard Warning

11.4.1 Overview

The hazard warning indicators help to make other drivers aware of your vehicle in a dangerous situation.

11.4.2 Switching Hazard Warning On and Off

- Press the hazard switch to turn On.
- Press the hazard switch again to turn Off.

When the hazard warning lights are turned On, all direction indicator lights will flash at the same time.

Hazard warning switch remains functional even while the vehicle is turned On/Off.

Switch On the hazard warning in the following situations:

- There is an emergency situation.
- The vehicle has broken down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow current traffic laws for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with current traffic laws.

INFORMATION

Hazard warning may turn On in the event of emergency braking.

11.5 Tire Repair Kit Usage

11.5.1 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***Punctures located within the tire treads can be sealed with the tire repair kit. Do not use the tire repair kit if there are several damages to the tire or***

the puncture is over 6 mm in diameter. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.

- ***Do not drive the vehicle at high speeds when a temporarily repaired tire is installed. There is a risk of an accident by losing vehicle control if the tire bursts or loses pressure.***
- ***Avoid high speed cornering and hard accelerations. The maximum permitted speed for a temporarily repaired tire is 110 km/h.***
- ***Do not drive the vehicle with a temporarily repaired tire for more than 100 km. The tire repair kit is only an emergency solution to enable you to drive to the nearest Togg authorized service.***
- ***Avoid contact with tire filling sealant. It is harmful to health and highly flammable. Never allow children to handle tire sealant bottle.***
- ***If the tire sealant comes into contact eyes or skin, thoroughly rinse the affected part with clean water and seek medical help immediately.***
- ***Do not use the sealant container after the expiry date shown on the container label.***
- ***There is a risk of injury. Never stand near the tire being inflated with a compressor. If you observe any cracks or bulges on the tire, switch Off the compressor immediately. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.***

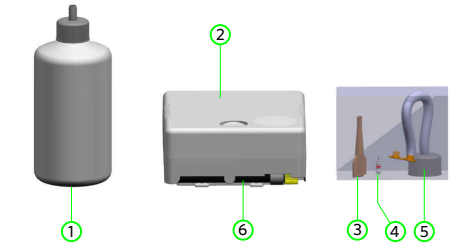
⚠ ATTENTION

There is a risk of damage to the compressor due to overheating if operated for too long. Do not run the compressor for more than 20 minutes.

11.5.2 Overview

In the event of a flat tire, the tire repair kit can be used to seal minor tire damages and allow you to continue the journey.

The tire repair kit is located in the trunk storage area. (9.5.4 Trunk Storage Box)



TG02524

1. Sealant container
2. Compressor
3. Valve core tool
4. Inner valve
5. Clear tube
6. Inflation tube

11.5.3 Filling Tire Sealant

1. Shake the sealant container (1).
2. Remove the valve cap from the punctured tire valve.
3. Remove the inner valve using the valve core tool (3).

INFORMATION

If a replacement inner valve is not available, stow the inner valve in a clean and dry place.

4. Install the clear tube (2) to the punctured tire valve and screw the sealant container (1) onto clear tube.
5. Squeeze the sealant container (1) forcefully until it is completely empty into the tire. Ensure to hold the sealant container (1) at a higher level than the tire valve level.
6. Remove the clear tube (5) from the tire valve.
7. Screw the inner valve (4) with the help of valve core tool (3) into the tire valve. Ensure that the inner valve is firmly installed.

11.5.4 Inflating the Tire

INFORMATION

When inflating the front tire using the compressor, route the compressor cable from inside the vehicle to connect the compressor plug to the 12V power outlet.

1. Remove the compressor (2) from the trunk storage box and carefully read the instruction mentioned on the compressor.
2. **⚠ ATTENTION** ***Make sure that the compressor is set to Off before connecting to the vehicle's 12V power outlet.***

   Connect the inflation tube (6) to the tire valve and connect the compressor plug into the vehicle's 12V power outlet in trunk storage. (9.5.7 12V Power Outlet)
3. Switch On the compressor (2) and inflate the tire with recommended tire pressure mentioned on the B - pillar. (10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information)

INFORMATION

If after 15 minutes from the compressor being switched On, the pressure gauge still shows a pressure of less than 19 psi, switch Off the compressor and disconnect the inflation tube from the tire valve. Tighten the valve cap on the valve and move the vehicle so that the tire makes about 5 turns to distribute the sealant inside it. Stop the vehicle, reconnect the inflation tube to the tire valve and run the compressor until the recommended pressure has been reached.

⚠ WARNING

If the tire pressure cannot be reached after 15 more minutes of the compressor use, the tire may have severe damage. Do not continue the journey with this tire. It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.

4. Switch Off the compressor (2), remove the compressor plug from vehicle's 12V power outlet and disconnect the inflation tube (6) from the tire valve.
5. Install the valve cap on the tire valve.
6. Stow the compressor (2) and tire repair kit into the trunk storage box.
7. Drive the vehicle for at least 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 110 km/h to evenly distribute the tire sealant inside the tire.

⚠ WARNING

- ***Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotation. Before driving away, make sure that no one is near the vehicle who could be sprayed with sealing compound.***
- ***If you experience any abnormal noise or vibrations while driving, stop the vehicle safely when traffic condition allows to. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.***

8. Stop the vehicle and park in safe place.
9. Remove the compressor (2) from the trunk storage box.
10. **⚠ ATTENTION** ***Make sure that the compressor is set to Off before connecting to the vehicle's 12V power outlet.***

    Connect the inflation tube (6) to the tire valve and connect the compressor plug into the vehicle's 12V power outlet in trunk storage.
11. Check the pressure gauge for the correct tire pressure reading.
12. If the tire pressure is under 19 psi, the tire is not sufficiently sealed. Do not continue to drive and it is recommended to contact a Togg authorized roadside assistance service for help.
13. If the tire pressure is 19 psi or above, start compressor and inflate the tire to recommended pressure. (10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information)

12 Car Care

12.1 Washing the Vehicle

12.1.1 Overview

Wash and preserve your vehicle frequently to protect it from environmental damage. Road salt, dust, insect remains, bird droppings, and tree sap become more harmful the longer they stay on the vehicle. To prevent corrosion, wash your vehicle often, especially in winter.

12.1.2 Steps for Exterior Cleaning

1. **Rinse thoroughly**

   Before washing, rinse off grime and grit from the vehicle using clean water. Remove mud build-up from areas where debris tends to gather, like wheel wells and panel seams. If road salt has been used on highways (especially during winter), ensure all traces are thoroughly rinsed from the vehicle's underside, wheel wells, and brakes.

2. **Hand wash**

   Use a clean, soft cloth to hand wash with cold or lukewarm water mixed with a mild, high-quality car shampoo.

⚠ ATTENTION

Some cleaners and car shampoos have chemicals that can damage or discolor plastic trim, lamps, or camera lenses. For instance, certain car cleaning products contain hydroxide or other highly alkaline ingredients that can harm exterior components.

3. **Rinse with clean water**

   Rinse with clean water after washing to avoid soap drying on the surfaces.

4. **Dry thoroughly and clean exterior glass**

   Dry thoroughly with a chamois cloth after washing and rinsing. Use glass cleaner to clean windows and mirrors. Do not scrape or use abrasive cleaning fluids on glass or mirror surfaces.

INFORMATION

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior light lenses, such as headlights or taillights. This is normal, as the lights are designed to withstand moisture. Typically, the condensation will clear after using the lights for a short time.

⚠ WARNING

Do not spray liquid at high velocity, such as with a pressure washer, towards the charge port while the vehicle is charging. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury or damage to the vehicle, charging equipment, or property.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Avoid washing your vehicle in direct sunlight, as detergents and wax can dry out and become abrasive. To prevent scratches, use lukewarm water to soften the dirt before washing with a soft sponge and plenty of sudsy water.***
- ***Do not use any chemicals other than approved washer fluid to clean the windshield. This can interfere with wiper friction and create a chattering sound.***
- ***Avoid using hot water, detergents, or highly alkaline or caustic cleaning products, especially those with hydroxide.***
- ***If using a pressure washer, maintain a distance of at least 30 cm (12") between the nozzle and the surface of vehicle. Do not aim the water jet directly at the camera(s) or parking sensors (if equipped). Use a soft cloth to clean the sensor or camera lens to avoid scratches or damage. Move the nozzle continuously and avoid focusing the water jet on one spot.***
- ***Never spray water directly on windows, door seals, hood seals, electronic modules, or exposed cables.***
- ***Rinse away any road salts from the underside of the vehicle, wheel wells, and brakes to avoid corrosive damages that may not be covered under warranty. After cleaning the vehicle, dry the brakes by going on a short drive and applying the brakes multiple times.***
- ***Use a high-quality microfiber cleaning cloth. Do not use tight-napped or rough cloths, such as washing mitts.***
- ***Ensure the wipers are Off before washing vehicle to avoid the risk of damaging the wipers.***
- ***Do not use chemical-based wheel cleaners or pre-wash products. These can damage the finish on the wheels.***
- ***If equipped with keyless entry, rearview mirrors may fold in and out automatically if the remote key is within the operating range.***

INFORMATION

Remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and sills when washing the vehicle.

⚠ ATTENTION

Remove the bird droppings from painted surfaces as soon as possible. Otherwise, the finish may be permanently damaged.

12.1.3 Cleaning Sensors & Camera Lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

12.2 Vinyl and Upholstery Care

12.2.1 Cleaning Vinyl Seats (if equipped)

Remove dust from the vinyl at regular intervals with a cloth moistened with water and non-detergent soap or vacuum cleaner. If not cleaned, dust and road dirt will settle into the pores and folds, which may lead to significant abrasion and make the vinyl surface prematurely brittle.

Clean light-colored vinyl more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster. Use warm water with soap, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the vinyl. After cleaning, allow the seats to air dry.

12.2.2 Cleaning Fabric Seats (If equipped)

Remove dust from the fabric seats at regular intervals with a vacuum cleaner. If the fabric surfaces are heavily soiled with beverage stains , use a suitable interior cleaner or wet vacuum cleaner.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***If equipped with heated seats, any liquid spilled on the heated seat should be removed immediately with a dry cloth. While cleaning seats, turn Off the seat heating feature to avoid component malfunction. Do not use the seat heating feature to dry the seats.***
- ***Remove aggressive substances immediately to prevent the vinyl from being altered or discolored.***
- ***To avoid seat cover damage while cleaning,***
  - ***Use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth to wipe the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure.***
  - ***Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on fabrics or vinyl surface.***
  - ***Do not use brushes, hard sponges, steam cleaners, or similar aids to clean the seat.***
- ***Clothing with Velcro closures or sharp objects such as zip fasteners, rivets, or belts may damage the seat cover surface by snagging or scratching. Do not rub such objects against the seat.***
- ***Read the manufacturer's recommendations before using seat covers. Some seat covers contain chemicals that may stain or discolor the seat material.***
- ***Avoid prolonged vinyl exposure to direct sunlight as it may get discoloured. If the vehicle is parked in the direct sunlight for a long time, it is recommended to cover the vinyl.***

INFORMATION

- ***Use of unsuitable cleaning products and inappropriate cleaning processes can damage the vinyl.***
- ***Prevent water accumulation on vinyl, immediately wipe with dry cloth.***

12.2.3 Cleaning Seat Belts

Operation of the seat belt reel can be affected by dirt on the seat belt, causing a safety hazard.

To ensure proper cleaning:

- Clean soiled seat belts with mild detergent.
- Avoid direct sunlight when drying.
- To clean the seat belts, only use suitable cleaning products.
- Do not bleach or dye the seat belts. The seat belt fabric strength may reduce, thus affecting safety.
- Do not retract the seat belts until they are dry.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of irreparable damage to the seat belts by the use of chemical cleaners, and the seat belts may loose protective function. To clean the seat belts, only use mild soap and water solution. Failure to follow this instruction may result in personal injury or even death.

12.2.4 Cleaning Floor Mats and Carpet

To thoroughly clean the interior, the floor mats can be removed from the vehicle. Clean the floor carpet using a microfiber cloth and water in the event of heavy soiling.

The floor carpet should be vacuum cleaned regularly. Spots on the floor mats can be removed with mild detergent.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use more than one floor mat on the driver's floor at a time. Always properly secure the floor mat used in this position. The accelerator and/or brake pedal may get caught due to any extra or unsecured floor mat on the driver's floor. Always ensure that the movement of these pedals is not obstructed.

12.2.5 Cleaning Fabric

Fabric linings on the headliner, pillars, and trims must be cleaned with suitable cleaning agents or foam. In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist, soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable cleaning agents.

⚠ ATTENTION

Remove aggressive substances immediately to prevent the fabric from being altered or discolored.

12.2.6 Cleaning Display and Screens

INFORMATION

Always turn Off the display before cleaning.

A contaminated display may affect its usability and readability. Regularly clean the display for a better experience.

Wipe the screen with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth and suitable display care products. Make sure the cloth is free of abrasive material, which can create scratches on the display.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Use of chemical cleaners, moisture, or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens.***
- ***Applying excessive pressure and use of abrasive material can damage the display surface.***
- ***Do not spray cleaners directly onto the display, instead spray them on the antistatic microfiber cloth used for cleaning the display.***

12.2.7 Cleaning Plastic

Clean the plastic trims with a damp microfiber cloth.

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***Always keep the plastic trims free from stickers, films or similar materials.***
- ***The plastic trim components may get damaged by cosmetic products, insect repellent, car freshener, or sunscreen. Do not allow these products to come in contact with the plastic trim.***

12.2.8 Cleaning High Gloss Plastic

For cleaning high gloss plastic, follow the below instructions to achieve clean and high gloss results.

- Clean interior high gloss trims with appropriate cleaning agents like polish and finish.
- For significant contamination (e.g., loss of gloss, scratches, or fingerprint stains), use an antistatic microfiber cloth or a moist soft sponge with suitable cleaning agents.
- Ensure the cloth is free from abrasive materials to avoid scratching the trim.

⚠ ATTENTION

Do not use alcohol based cleaning products. There is a risk of component damage.

12.2.9 Cleaning Vinyl

To clean vinyl surfaces, start by removing loose dirt with a soft brush or vacuum. Mix mild soap with warm water and use a soft cloth or sponge to gently scrub the vinyl, focusing on stained or heavily soiled areas. Rinse the area thoroughly with clean water and dry it immediately with a microfiber cloth to prevent water spots. Avoid using harsh chemicals, such as solvents or alcohol-based cleaners, as they can damage the vinyl.

12.3 Vehicle Storage

12.3.1 General

If you plan on storing your vehicle for two weeks or more, refer to the following recommendation to keep your vehicle in good operating condition.

Vehicle components are engineered for regular and reliable driving. If specific precautions are not followed while storing the vehicle for the long term, the vehicle components may lead to degraded performance or failure.

- Store the vehicle in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.

- Regularly perform the necessary maintenance on the vehicle if it is stored outside to protect against rust and damage.

12.3.2 Body

- Wash your vehicle regularly if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Make sure all rubber parts are free from oil and solvents.

12.3.3 High-voltage and Low-voltage Battery Systems

- When storing your vehicle for more than two weeks, do not park the vehicle with a discharged high-voltage battery. The state of charge should be approximately 30%.

⚠ WARNING

It is recommend that the 12V low-voltage battery be disconnected by Togg service personnel. There is a risk of injury, never disconnect the 12V low-voltage battery yourself.

12.3.4 Tires

- Maintain recommended air tire pressure. (10.4.1 Tire Inflation Information)
- The shape of the tire may change if the vehicle parked in direct sunlight for a period of time. Move vehicle forward or rearward regularly to avoid patch formation.

12.3.5 Removing Your Vehicle from Storage

Follow the below procedure when removing the vehicle from storage:

- Wash the vehicle and remove dirt or grease from the window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check and set the tire pressure as per the tire pressure label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle back and forth to remove rust build-up.

It is recommended to contact a Togg authorized service if you have any concerns or issues.

13 Technical Data

13.1 Vehicle Identification

13.1.1 Vehicle Identification Number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) legally identifies your vehicle and can be viewed from outside through a designated area in the lower left corner of the windshield.

TG05853

13.1.2 Statutory Plate

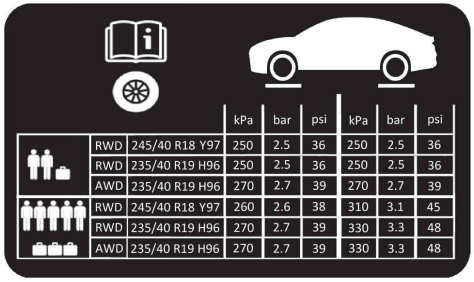
The statutory plate is located on the B-pillar, visible upon opening the driver's side door.

TG05852

1. Vehicle Type Approval Number
2. Vehicle Identification Number
3. Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
4. Gross Combination Weight Rating
5. Gross Front Axle Weight Rating
6. Gross Rear Axle Weight Rating

13.1.3 Tire Pressure Plate

The tire pressure plate is located on the B-pillar, visible upon opening the driver's side door.



			kPa	bar	psi	kPa	bar	psi
	RWD	245/40 R18 Y97	250	2.5	36	250	2.5	36
	RWD	235/40 R19 H96	250	2.5	36	250	2.5	36
	AWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	270	2.7	39
	RWD	245/40 R18 Y97	260	2.6	38	310	3.1	45
	RWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	330	3.3	48
	AWD	235/40 R19 H96	270	2.7	39	330	3.3	48

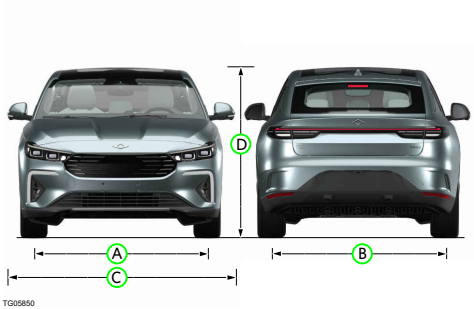
TG05854

13.2 Vehicle Specifications

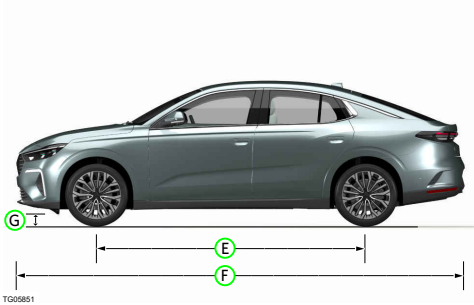
13.2.1 Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The vehicle height may also deviate, e.g. as a result of tires and load.



TG05850



TG05851

Dimensions	
Front track width (A)	1591 mm
Rear track width (B)	1602 mm

Dimensions		
Width with mirrors folded out (C)	Standard Mirror	2105 mm
Width with mirrors folded in	Standard Mirror	1920 mm
Height (D)**	SR RWD MID 18'' Tires	1556 mm
	SR RWD PREM 19'' Tires	1562 mm
	LR RWD MID 18'' Tires	1553 mm
	LR RWD PREM 19'' Tires	1559 mm
	LR AWD PREM 19'' Tires	1559 mm
Ground clearance including front airlip (G)*	SR RWD MID 18'' Tires	122 mm
	SR RWD PREM 19'' Tires	127 mm
	LR RWD MID 18'' Tires	120 mm
	LR RWD PREM 19'' Tires	125 mm
	LR AWD PREM 19'' Tires	124 mm
Wheelbase (E)		2890 mm
Length (F)		4830 mm
Turning diameter - curb to curb		11.6 m
Turning diameter - wall to wall		12.1 m

* with Driver
** Curb Weight (Empty vehicle)

13.2.2 Weights and Loads

Vehicle specific load information can be found on the statutory plate on the driver's side B pillar.

Vehicle weight information can vary depending on optional equipment installed in the vehicle.

⚠ ATTENTION

When loading the vehicle, the maximum gross vehicle weight and permissible axle weights should not be exceeded.

RWD		
Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, no optional equipment	Short Range Base	1962 Kg
	Short Range Mid	1998 Kg
	Short Range Premium	2025 Kg
	Long Range Base	2118 Kg
	Long Range Mid	2154 Kg
	Long Range Premium	2181 Kg
Gross Vehicle Weight	Short Range Base	2362 Kg
	Short Range Mid	2398 Kg
	Short Range Premium	2425 Kg
	Long Range Base	2518 Kg
	Long Range Mid	2543 Kg
	Long Range Premium	2560 Kg
Permissible front axle capacity	Short Range Base	1173 Kg
	Short Range Mid	1173 Kg
	Short Range Premium	1173 Kg
	Long Range Base	1304 Kg
	Long Range Mid	1304 Kg
	Long Range Premium	1304Kg

Permissible rear axle capacity	Short Range Base	1377 Kg
	Short Range Mid	1377 Kg
	Short Range Premium	1377 Kg
	Long Range Base	1420 Kg
	Long Range Mid	1420 Kg
	Long Range Premium	1420 Kg
Max roof load		70 Kg
Permissible luggage compartment load		100 kg

AWD	
Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, no optional equipment	2294 Kg
Gross Vehicle Weight	2671 Kg
Permissible front axle capacity	1304 Kg
Permissible rear axle capacity	1420 Kg
Max roof load	70 Kg
Permissible luggage compartment load	100 Kg

13.3 Operating Fluids

13.3.1 Overview

Operating fluids include:

- Brake fluid
- Coolant
- Refrigerant
- Washer fluid

Only use Togg approved products. Damages caused due to the use of unapproved products will not be covered under warranty.

13.3.2 Safety Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- ***There is a risk of fire and injury. Keep antifreeze away from source of combustion. Comply to instructions on containers.***
- ***Some antifreezes can contain toxic substances and are flammable. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.***
- ***There is a risk of personal injury. It is recommended to have the air conditioning system serviced by a Togg authorized service.***
- ***Unqualified work in the vicinity of high-voltage system can lead to malfunctions, accidents and injuries.It is recommended you first choose Togg authorized service for any assistance.***
- ***Always keep children away from the front compartment and never leave them unsupervised.***

⚠ ATTENTION

- ***There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid. Such additives may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not mix different screen wash concentrates or antifreezes. Always comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.***
- ***While filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluid to the wrong reservoirs. There is a risk of severe malfunctions and damage to vehicle components.***
- ***Incorrect disposal of the operating fluids can cause environmental pollution. Always dispose the operating fluids in accordance with local regulations.***

13.3.3 Brake Fluid

Brake fluid will gradually absorb moisture from the surrounding air over the course of time. This lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. If the boiling point is too low, vapour pockets may form in the brake system when the brakes are applied hard. Vapour pockets reduce the braking efficiency, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely.

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to have the brake fluid changed.The Togg authorized service will inform you of the replacement intervals.

Brake fluid level low warning

When the brake fluid level is low, a warning icon appears on the driver's screen.

If the brake fluid level low warning icon appears, then:

- Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- It is recommended to inform a Togg authorized service and have the brake system checked.

⚠ ATTENTION

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled can damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tires. Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.

Icon	Description
	Brake fluid level low (Icon is steady)

Checking brake fluid level

It is recommended to get brake fluid level checked by a Togg authorized service.

The brake fluid level drops slightly during vehicle operation as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Recommended brake fluid grade: DOT 5.1

Filling Quantity: 0.9 Kg

13.3.4 Coolant

Only work on the cooling system if you are familiar with the task, know the safety procedures, and have the right equipment, fluids, and tools. It is recommended that the work should be carried out by a Togg authorized service as they have the necessary tools and trained workshop personnel.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of injury due to pressurized and hot coolant inside the expansion tank. Never open the cap on a coolant expansion tank yourself. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service for any assistance.

Icon	Description
	Thermal system error (Icon is steady)
	Thermal system coolant level low (Icon is steady)

If coolant temperature high light flashes on the driver's screen:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Turn Off the vehicle.
- It is recommended to inform a Togg authorized service and seek assistance.

⚠ ATTENTION

A drop in coolant level indicates a vehicle defect, such as leaks in the coolant system. It is recommended to visit a Togg authorized service to check the coolant system. Never add coolant yourself.

Recommended coolant grade: 45% Glycol and 55% Water

Filling Quantity:

- **EDU Cooling System**

  AWD - 7.2 Litres, RWD - 5.8 Litres

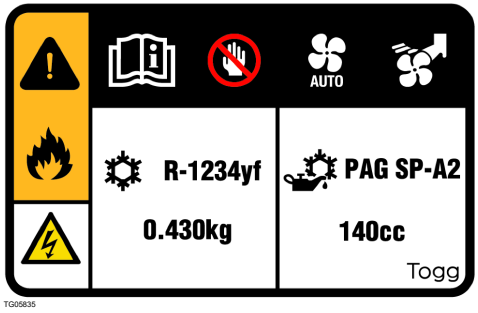
- **High-voltage Battery Cooling System**

  AWD - 8.2 Litres, RWD - 8.2 Litres

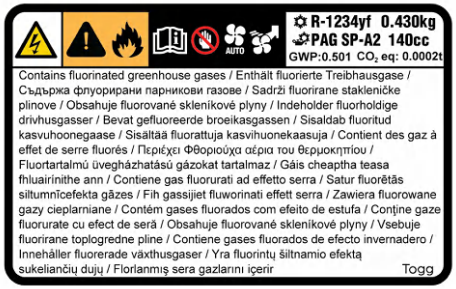
13.3.5 Refrigerant in Air Conditioning System

The air conditioning system in the vehicle uses a R1234yf refrigerant. The label on the inside of hood contains more information regarding the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system.

Till 14 September 2025



From 15 September 2025



TG07147

Warning label explanation

Symbol	Explanation
	Warning
	Flammable refrigerant
	Hot components
	Type of Compressor oil
	Type of refrigerant
	Radiator fan can switch On at any time
	Always follow instructions in the owner's manual
	High voltage warning
	Moving fan blades, keep hands clear to avoid injury

13.3.6 Washer Fluid

When the washer fluid level is low, a warning symbol appears on the driver's screen. Check and refill as necessary. All spray nozzles use the washer fluid from same tank. Use products recommended by Togg for the windshield washer system.

Recommended mixing ratio of antifreeze and water should be 50:50 (50% antifreeze and 50% water).

Icon	Description
	Washer fluid level low (Icon is steady)

⚠ WARNING

- ***Never mix coolant additives or other unsuitable additives into the windshield washer fluid. These may leave an oily film on the window, considerably restricting the field of vision.***
- ***In temperatures below 4° C, use washer fluid with antifreeze. In cold weather, using a washer fluid without antifreeze can impair visibility through the windshield.***
- ***Do not mix different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Mixing different washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.***
- ***The use of washer fluid with high chemical concentration at high temperatures may damage plastic parts outside the vehicle.***

Filling quantity: 3 Litres

Anti-freezing temperature: -20°C

Abbreviation

ABS - Anti-Lock Braking System
AC - Alternating Current
ACC - Adaptive Cruise Control
ADAS - Advanced Driver Assistance System
AEB - Advanced Emergency Braking
AVAS - Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System
AWD - All Wheel Drive
BEV - Battery Electric Vehicle
BSCA - Blind Side Collision Avoidance
CC - Cruise Control
CMS - Camera Monitoring System
CSC - Cornering Stability Control
DAB - Digital Audio Broadcasting
DC - Direct Current
EBD - Electronic Brakeforce Distribution
ELK - Emergency Lane Keeping
EPB - Electric Parking Brake
EPS - Electric Power Steering
ESC - Electronic Stability Control
ESS - Evasive Steering Support
EV - Electric Vehicle
FCW - Forward Collision Warning
FM - Frequency Modulation
GPS - Global Positioning System
HDC - Hill Descent Control
HLA - High Beam Light Assist
HMI - Human-Machine Interface
HV - High-voltage
iACC - Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control
IBB - Intelligent Brake Booster
ISA - Intelligent Speed Assist
iSL - Intelligent Speed Limiter
LDPOC - Lane Departure Prevention- Oncoming traffic
LDW - Lane Departure Warning
LSA - Lane Safety Assist
LTE - Long Term Evolution
LV - Low-voltage
NFC - Near Field Communication
OBD - On-Board Diagnostic
PIN - Personal Identification Number
POI - Point of Interest
QR Code - Quick Response Code
RADAR - Radio Detection and Ranging
RF - Radio Frequency
RTTI - Real Time Traffic Information
RWD - Rear Wheel Drive
SoC - State of Charge
SoH - State of Health
SS - Speed Symbol
TPMS - Tire Pressure Monitoring System
TWI - Tread Wear Indicator
VIN - Vehicle Identification Number
VRU - Vulnerable Road User's

Togg Care and Roadside Assistance: +49-711-7815-8644
Togg Care e-mail: toggcare@togg.eu

Togg